















A SMALLER  
SCHOOL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES,

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA TO THE YEAR 1880.

By DAVID B. SCOTT,  
AUTHOR OF "A SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES."

WITH MAPS AND ENGRAVINGS.



NEW YORK:  
HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,  
FRANKLIN SQUARE.

1884.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1884, by  
HARPER & BROTHERS,  
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

## P R E F A C E.

---

THIS work has been prepared to meet the wants of students who have not time to complete the study of "Harper's School History of the United States." While it is little more than half the size of that book, care has been taken not to omit any points of importance, nor to sacrifice clearness to brevity.

In general arrangement it is much the same as the larger work. Each paragraph is introduced by prominent type, which will aid in impressing important events on the memory.

With these few words, the "Smaller History of the United States" is now presented to the notice of teachers, and other friends of education.

NEW YORK, *June*, 1872.



# CONTENTS.

---

## CHAPTER I.

### DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, 1492, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN,  
1607—A PERIOD OF 115 YEARS.

SPANISH DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.....	Page 1
FRENCH EXPLORATIONS .....	10
ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS.....	13
General Summary of Claims on this Continent.....	17

## CHAPTER II.

### COLONIAL HISTORY.

FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, 1607, TO THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE  
FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, 1754.

#### PART I.—VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND.

Virginia.....	20
Maryland.....	27

#### PART II.—NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

Massachusetts.....	29
Connecticut.....	38
Rhode Island.....	41
New Hampshire.....	42

#### PART III.—MIDDLE COLONIES.

New York.....	43
New Jersey.....	46
Delaware—Pennsylvania.....	48

#### PART IV.—EXTREME SOUTHERN COLONIES

North Carolina.....	50
South Carolina.....	52
Georgia.....	53
GENERAL REFLECTIONS ON COLONIAL HISTORY.....	54

## CHAPTER III.

FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS FROM 1609. ....	60
---	----

## CHAPTER IV.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.....	Page 65
Events of 1754.....	66
Events of 1755.....	68
Events of 1756.....	70
Events of 1757.....	71
Events of 1758.....	72
Events of 1759.....	73
Results of the French and Indian War.....	76

## CHAPTER V.

CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.....	78
--	----

## CHAPTER VI.

WAR OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.....	85
Events of 1775.....	85
Events of 1776.....	90
Events of 1777.....	95
Events of 1778.....	102
Events of 1779.....	105
Events of 1780.....	108
Events of 1781.....	112
Events of 1782-'83.....	116
Government from 1781 to 1789.....	117

## CHAPTER VII.

## THE UNITED STATES UNDER THE CONSTITUTION.

## PART I.—FROM 1789 TO 1817.

Administration of George Washington.....	121
"    John Adams.....	124
"    Thomas Jefferson.....	125
"    James Madison.....	128
War with England—1812.....	129
"    "    1813.....	133
"    "    1814-'15.....	136

## PART II.—FROM 1817 TO 1841.

Administration of James Monroe.....	142
"    John Quincy Adams.....	144
"    Andrew Jackson.....	145
"    Martin Van Buren.....	147



## PART III.—FROM 1841 TO 1849.

Administration of William Henry Harrison.....	Page 149
“ John Tyler .....	149
“ James K. Polk.....	151

## PART IV.—FROM 1849 TO 1861.

Administration of Zachary Taylor.....	158
“ Millard Fillmore.....	158
“ Franklin Pierce ...	159
“ James Buchanan.....	160
GENERAL REFLECTIONS .....	163

## PART V.—FROM 1861 TO 1869.

Administration of Abraham Lincoln.....	166
CIVIL WAR. Events of 1861.....	166
“ Events of 1862.....	175
“ Events of 1863.....	184
“ Events of 1864.....	188
“ Events of 1865.....	194
Administration of Andrew Johnson.....	196

## PART VI.—FROM 1869 TO 1881.

Administration of Ulysses S. Grant .....	198
“ Rutherford B. Hayes.....	202
“ James A. Garfield.....	204
GENERAL VIEW.....	207

---

States admitted and Territories organized since 1787 .....	211
Settlement and Admission of the States.....	212
Presidents and Vice-presidents of the United States.....	213
Declaration of Independence.....	215
Constitution of the United States .....	218
Chronological Table.....	231



# HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

---



## CHAPTER I.

### DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

FROM THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, 1492, TO THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, 1607—A PERIOD OF 115 YEARS.

1. **Christopher Columbus.**—In the year 1480 there was living in the city of Lisbon, the capital of Portugal, a navigator named CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, who supported his family by making maps and charts. This was an important business in those days, particularly in Lisbon, because the King of Portugal was very active in sending out ships on voyages of discovery. These voyages were southward, along the west coast of Africa, which was then

only partially explored; and their object was to find a direct route to India by sea.

2. **India and its Riches.**—For many centuries India had been celebrated for its wealth. Its silks, its shawls, its spices, and fragrant woods, its ivory and pearls, its diamonds and precious stones, together with its strange animals, made it to Europeans the wonder-land of those early days.

3. **The India Trade.**—From the shores of India the goods were transported over the Arabian Sea to the Red Sea; thence on camels to the River Nile; then down the Nile to Alexandria. From this point they were conveyed across the Mediterranean to Italy. Such a route was very tedious. It was, moreover, exposed to danger from storms and from pirates. We can thus understand why Portugal was so actively seeking a safer and more direct road, and to control this rich trade.

4. **The Reasoning of Columbus.**—While Columbus was busy making charts, his daring mind was thinking of a new route to India by sea. He reflected on the roundness of the earth. He saw that the geographers knew little of the extent of Asia, and he was convinced that its eastern shores must reach nearer Europe than they supposed. Finally he came to the conclusion that, by sailing directly westward, he would easily reach the great islands on the shores of Farther India.

5. **The Geography of the Earth** was little known before the time of Columbus. To show this, the two following maps have been inserted. In Map No. 1 we see that much of Africa is wanting; America and Australia are not seen; and on the shores of Asia are figures of strange animals, of monsters, and men without heads. What was

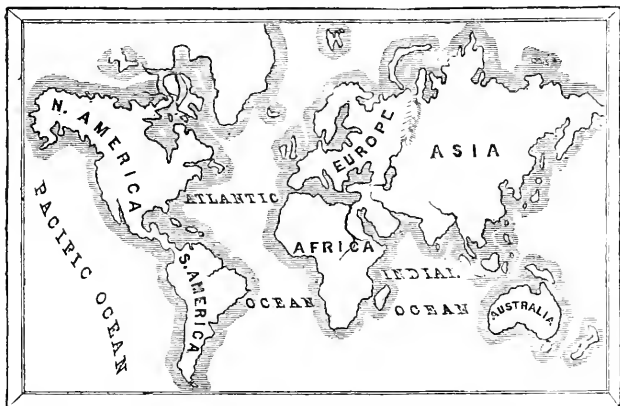
- 
1. What is said of Columbus? Why was chart-making important? What is said of the Portuguese voyages?
  2. State what is said of the wealth of India.
  3. What is said of the route to India? Of its dangers? Of Portugal?
  4. What idea filled the mind of Columbus? State the steps in his reasoning, and his conclusion.

unknown the geographers filled with shapes of terror.

6. Columbus seeking Aid.—Being a native of Genoa (*jen'o-ah*), in Italy, Columbus first applied to that city for as-



MAP I.—THE WORLD AS KNOWN BEFORE COLUMBUS.



MAP II.—THE WORLD AS KNOWN IN OUR DAY.

sistance to make a westward voyage. But she turned a deaf ear to his requests. Next he tried the King of Portugal, and failed. He then went to the Court of Spain, where he waited wearily for several years. Here he was opposed by the learned men to whom the king referred his schemes. He was ridiculed as a wild dreamer. The very children in the streets smiled at him as he passed, and put their fingers to their heads. At last, in

1490, he was leaving Spain sad and disappointed, leading his little son by the hand, and so poor that he begged bread and water at a convent-door. Fortunately some of his friends persuaded him to return.

7. **Columbus obtains Assistance.**—Isabella, the queen, now listened to him with interest, as he painted, in imagination, the wealth of the new lands in the West. She was stirred to enthusiasm when he spoke of the natives to be converted to the Christian religion. Her husband, Ferdinand, was not so easily moved. The long wars with the Moors of Spain had just ended, and his treasury was nearly empty. Isabella offered to pledge her crown-jewels for the expenses of the expedition, and he at length yielded. The jewels were not needed, however, and the money was advanced from the royal treasury.

8. **The Vessels.**—The king's orders secured, at the port of Palos (*pah'los*), in the south of Spain, two little vessels, called caravals; Columbus and his friends added a third. They were so small that we are struck with wonder at the courage of Columbus, who was about to sail in them over a stormy and unknown ocean. The largest was not over one hundred tons burden, and this was the only one that had a deck throughout its entire length.

9. **The Voyage.**—In these three vessels Columbus, made Admiral by the king, and his companions sailed from Palos, August 3, 1492. When, at last, after leaving the Canary Islands, they pushed out into the great sea, across which no ship had ever sailed, the hearts of the sailors failed them for fear. After many days they became despairing and mutinous. They even spoke of throwing the Admiral overboard and returning to Spain. Through all this the lofty spirit of Columbus was unmoved. He sail-

---

6. To whom did Columbus first apply, and why? To whom next? With what success? Where is Genoa? Where did he go after trying Portugal? What was his success? What is said of his leaving?

7. Who proved his great friend? What is said of her? Of Ferdinand?

8. What were the king's orders? What is said of the vessels?

ed steadily westward, and AT DAWN OF OCTOBER 12, 1492, LAND WAS SEEN.

10. **Landing of Columbus.**—He approached the shore richly attired in scarlet, holding the royal standard. On landing, he threw himself on his knees, kissed the earth, and returned thanks to God with tears of joy. Rising, he took possession of the country, with great ceremony, in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain.

11. **Further Discoveries.**—The land was found to be an island, which Columbus named San Salvádor, one of the Bahamas. Remaining a few days here, he then sailed away, and discovered the islands of Cuba, Jamaica, Hayti, (*hā-te*), and Porto Rico (*ree'ko*). Here, then, thought Columbus, were the long-wished-for islands off the coast of India, and he named the inhabitants Indians.

12. **Discovery of the Main-land.**—Columbus made, in all, four voyages to the New World. In the third of these, in the year 1498, he touched the main-land at the mouth of the River Orinoco, on the coast of Paria, South America. But he never dreamed that this was the shore of a new continent. When he died, in the year 1506, he remained firm in the belief that he had discovered the eastern shores of India.

13. **The Naming of America.**—Columbus discovered the road to the Western Continent. It would, therefore, appear a matter of the simplest justice that it should have been named after him. An accident, however, gave that honor to another. Amerigo Vespucci (*ă-měr'e-go ves-pootch-ee*), a Florentine, visited the continent in the year 1499. After his return, his account of the new regions was published in Europe. A geographer suggested that

9. What was Columbus's title? When, and from what place, did they sail? Where is Palos? What of their voyage? When was America discovered?

10. What is said of the landing of Columbus?

11. What land had Columbus first touched? What else did he discover? Where did he suppose he had arrived? What did he call the natives, and why?

12. How many voyages did Columbus make? When and where did he first discover the main-land? What did he himself think this to be?

the land be called America, and by degrees the new continent became known by that name.

14. **John and Sebastian Cabot.**—Columbus was not, however, the first that discovered the main-land. In the year 1497, one year before the coast of Paria was visited, a ship from Bristol, England, under the command of JOHN CABOT (*cab'ot*), sailed along the coast of North America for three hundred leagues or more. He discovered the “new-found island,” now known as Newfoundland. Next year, 1498, his son SEBASTIAN, who was with his father the previous year, coasted from Labrador to Florida, in hopes of finding a passage to India. On the voyages of the Cabots the English founded their claim to a large part of the North American continent.

15. **Spanish Exploration continued.**—Multitudes of adventurers from Spain flocked to the New World. Many of these were brave soldiers who had been fighting the Moors for years. Now that these wars were ended, they thirsted for fresh excitement. Darien was settled by OJEDA (*o-ha'dah*), a companion of Columbus, in 1510. The Andes were climbed; the Isthmus was crossed; and in the year 1513 BALBOA (*bal-bo'ah*), from the southwestern slope of the mountains, first saw the Pacific Ocean, which he named the SOUTH SEA.

16. **Florida—Ponce de Leon.**—In the beginning of 1512, the brave old soldier PONCE DE LEON (*pon-thā' da lāōn*) was cruising among the Bahama Islands. He had heard from the Indians the story of a fountain that would impart immortal youth to those who should bathe in its waters. In searching for this, he found no fountain, but he gained that which has made his name immortal. His ship accidentally touched the main-land, rich with flowers, on March 12, 1512. This being Easter-Sunday, called

13. Why was the continent not named after Columbus?

14. Did Columbus first discover the main-land? Who did, and when? Who followed in 1498? What was the object of this voyage?

15. What is said of those that followed Columbus? What was settled? What discovery was made in 1513?



by the Spaniards Pasqua de Flores—the *feast of flowers*—he named the new country Florida.

17. **Yucatan—Mexico.**—The coast of Yucatan was explored by CORDOVA in 1517. Mexico was visited by GRIJALVA (*grē-hal'vah*) in 1518, and the conquest of that rich country was achieved by CORTEZ in 1521. The Spaniards under PIZARRO (*pē-zār'ro*) pushed down the west coast of America as far as Peru, and to all of these possessions, richer than the grandest dreams of Columbus, there was given the name of New Spain.

18. **Carolina—Ayllon.**—In the year 1520 some vessels from Hayti, under AYLLON (*ilē-yōne'*), were cruising among the Bahamas, searching for Indians to carry them as slaves back to the mines. A storm drove the ships on the coast, north of Florida. In this way the shore of what is now SOUTH CAROLINA was first discovered.

19. **Florida—Narvaez.**—In all their expeditions the Spaniards were guided chiefly by their thirst for gold. This led to the exploration of Florida, which had been named by the adventurers the land of gold. NARVAEZ (*nar-vah'eth*) first made the attempt, in 1528, with 300 men. After enduring terrible disasters, only four of his companions returned to Spain to tell the story of their sufferings.

20. **De Soto.**—This did not prevent fresh adventurers. There came from Spain a renowned soldier, named DE SOTO, who had fought with Pizarro, and grown rich in Peru. His great ambition was to rival the conquest of Mexico by Cortez, and he thought he could find such an empire in Florida. He had been made governor of Cuba, and had obtained a royal grant of land in Florida. The thousand gallant men that landed with him in Tampa

---

16. Who was Ponce de Leon? What was the object of his voyage? What was his success? Why did he name it Florida?

17. What occurred in 1517 and 1518? What in 1521? What else is said of the movements of the Spaniards?

18. What was the object of Ayllon's expedition? What discovery did it make?

19. What chiefly prompted the Spanish expeditions? What was Florida called? Describe the expedition of Narvaez.

Bay in 1539 fared little better than Narvaez and his companions. Their march, first north, then westward, was almost a continuous battle with the Indians.

21. **The Mississippi discovered.**—In the year 1541, after two years' wanderings through Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi, they reached the **MISSISSIPPI RIVER**. On its banks De Soto, worn out with care and disappointment, died in the spring of 1542, and was buried in its waters. The few survivors made their way down the river to a Spanish settlement on the Gulf of Mexico.

22. **Melendez** (*mā-len'deth*), a Spanish noble, was more successful. Being made governor of Florida, he organized an expedition, and settled **ST. AUGUSTINE** (*aw-gus-teen'*). This was in the year 1565. It is therefore the oldest town in the United States.

23. **Pacific Coast.**—In the year 1542 **CABRILLO** (*cā-breel'-yo*) was sent from Mexico to explore the Pacific coast to the northward. There were hopes that he would find a strait or passage to the Atlantic. Cabrillo reached the 44th degree of north latitude, and thus explored the coast of **CALIFORNIA** and part of **OREGON**.

24. **New-Mexico—Coronado.**—Previous to the expedition of Cabrillo, **CORONADO** (*nah-dō*) was dispatched, in 1540, by the Viceroy of Mexico to strike north into the interior by the way of the River Gila (*hē'lah*). While De Soto was in the wilds of Alabama, Coronado, far west, was, in 1541, toiling among the mountains near the headwaters of the Rio Grande (*rē-o gran-dy*). He is said to have gone as far north as **COLORADO**.

20. Who was De Soto? What was his ambition? What had been given him by the King of Spain? How many men went with him? Where is Tampa Bay? See Map, page 9. What is said of their march?

21. What great discovery did he make, and when? What became of De Soto? Through what states did he go? What became of his companions?

22. Who was Melendez? What did he accomplish?

23. Who was sent from Mexico in 1542? What was the object? What did he explore?

24. What expedition was dispatched in 1540? What was its object? What is said of him and De Soto? How far is Coronado said to have gone?

25. **Espego.**—Forty years after, ESPEGO (*es-pā'ho*) passed up the valley of the Rio Grande, and explored the same region. He named it NEW MEXICO, and founded the town of SANTA FÉ (*fā*) in the year 1582.



EARLY VOYAGES OF THE SPANIARDS FROM CUBA AND OTHER ISLANDS.

26. **Summary of Spanish Explorations.**—The Spaniards, having planted themselves on the great islands they first discovered, pushed out in different directions to the mainland. They soon overran Central America, Mexico, and Peru. Within the present limits of the United States they were also active: 1. FLORIDA, a vast and undefined region, was partially explored; 2. The MISSISSIPPI was discovered; 3. NEW MEXICO was explored; 4. ST. AUGUSTINE and SANTA FÉ were founded; 5. The coast of CALIFORNIA was examined for many leagues.

25. What exploration was made in 1581? What town did he found?

26. What is said of the great islands they first discovered? Give a list of their various explorations and settlements north of the gulf.

27. We have seen that the discovery of America arose out of a desire to find a new route to India. This was in the interests of trade. Columbus started to reach India, and found what he thought were the islands on its coast.

28. But no India trade came; no pearls, no rubies, no rich goods. This, for some years, was a great disappointment to Spain; all the more because Portuguese navigators sailed round the Cape of Good Hope in 1498, and secured the trade of India to Portugal.

29. The Spaniards did not gain what they first sought, but they soon obtained wealth nearly as great. In less than twenty years immense quantities of gold and silver began to flow into Spain from Mexico and Peru. Before long she became the richest and mightiest nation of Europe. So much the discovery of Columbus did for Spain.

---

#### FRENCH EXPLORATIONS.

1. **French Fishing-grounds.**—As early as the year 1504 there were a number of French fishing-vessels around the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It was not then known by that name. In the year 1506 DENYS (*den-ée*), a Frenchman, drew, for the use of these fishermen, a rude map of the Gulf. This became a favorite fishing-ground, and ships of other nations congregated there.

2. **Verrazani** (*vā-rat-tsah'ne*), a Florentine, was sent out by the French king, in the year 1524, in command of an exploring expedition. He first touched the coast at North Carolina, and explored as far north as Newfoundland. It is believed that he entered the harbors of New York and Newport. Verrazani's voyage was the foundation of the French claim in America.

---

27. What led to the discovery of America?

28. Why was Spain so much disappointed after the discovery?

29. How were they compensated for not gaining the India trade? What did this do for Spain?

1. Where were the French in the beginning of the 16th century? What is said of Denys? Who visited the Gulf besides the French?

2. Who was Verrazani? What of his expedition? What was founded on it?

3. **The St. Lawrence—Cartier** (*cár-te-á*), sent out from France in 1534, entered the gulf which he named St. LAWRENCE, and then sailed a short distance up the river. In a second expedition, in the following year, he went up the river as far as an Indian town, which he named Montreal. He tried to plant a settlement on the Island of Orleans (*ór-le-anz'*), but failed. The terrible severity of the Northern winter and its extreme length so discouraged his companions, that they were glad to return to France in the spring. Cartier tried it again at the same place in 1541, with no better success.

4. **The Huguenots in Florida.**—Twenty-one years later, 1562, some French Protestants, called Huguenots (*hu-gě-nots*), were sent out by COLIGNY (*ko-leen-ye*), admiral of France, under RIBAUT (*re-bó*), to try the milder climate of Florida. They built a fort at Port Royal Inlet, and twenty-six men were left to take care of it. Ribaut sailed back to France. The little garrison soon became homesick, quarreled among themselves, and killed their commander. Almost in despair, they then built a rude vessel, in which they set sail to France, and were picked up in a starving condition by an English ship.

5. **Laudonniere.**—Two years afterward, in 1564, three ship-loads of Huguenots, under LAUDONNIERE (*lah-don-yáre*), came to St. John's River and built a fort called Carolina. This was in honor of King Charles of France—Carolus being Latin for Charles. Melendez, of whom we have already read on page 8, determined to expel the Huguenots from his territory of Florida. Marching rapidly from St. Augustine, in 1565, he fell suddenly on the French at the fort, and put nearly all the men, women, and children to death.

3. What voyage was made in 1534? What is said of the one in 1535? Did he ever make another attempt to settle?

4. What attempt at settlement was made in 1562? Where did they settle? What became of the band? Where is Port Royal Inlet?

5. What attempt was made soon after? How soon? Why was the fort called Carolina? What happened to the colony?

6. **De Gourgès.**—The French king did nothing when the news of this massacre reached Europe; but DE GOURGES (*dū goorj'*), a French soldier of fortune, equipped an expedition at his own expense, and sailed secretly to Fort Carolina. Swift destruction came to the garrison. Two hundred Spaniards were surprised, captured, and hung on trees. Having taken this terrible revenge, De Gourgès returned immediately to France.

7. **Acadia—De Monts.**—In the year 1603 a rich Huguenot courtier, named De Monts (*dū-mong'*), obtained a grant of all the country from what is now New York to the Island of Cape Breton. This tract was named ACADIA, and in 1605 the first permanent French settlement in America was made on it at PORT ROYAL, now called Annapolis.

8. **Champlain.**—The distinguished explorer CHAMPLAIN (*sham-plane*), a former companion of De Monts, founded Quebec on the St. Lawrence in 1608. In the spring of 1609 he discovered the lake that bears his name.

9. **Divisions of French Territory.**—Now, at last, the French foothold on the St. Lawrence and its neighborhood was secure. To the whole of that vast and little known region, stretching indefinitely westward, and embracing within its borders Canada and Acadia, was given the name of NEW FRANCE. CANADA was applied to the tract watered by the St. Lawrence and its tributaries. ACADIA was limited to New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and the Island of Cape Breton (*brit'-un*).

10. **Summary of French Explorations.**—The principal points to be borne in mind are, 1. The FRENCH FISHING-GROUNDS in and around the GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE, as early as 1500; 2. the GULF EXPLORED, and a rude chart

6. How did the French king revenge this? Who did revenge it? Give an account of this.

7. What was Acadia at first? Who obtained this tract? Give its first settlement. Where is Annapolis?

8. Who founded Quebec? Who was Champlain? What did he discover in 1609? In what states is this?

9. Name the divisions of French territory. What was meant by New France? What did Canada embrace? What did Acadia? Did Acadia ever embrace more?

made of it, in 1506; 3. then came, naturally, the **EXPLO-  
RATION** of the **ST. LAWRENCE**, in 1534 and 1535; and, 4. **ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS** on that river, 1535, 1541.

11. **PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS**, after more than sixty years, were made at **PORT ROYAL** in 1605, and **QUEBEC** in 1608. The **SETTLEMENTS** in **FRENCH CAROLINA**, 1562 and 1564, as it was for some time called, were only **TEMPORARY**. The French made no claim, in after years, to this part of America. The French occupation was on the **ST. LAWRENCE** and in **ACADIA**.

12. The **EARLY SETTLERS** were chiefly **HUGUENOTS**. Religious persecution, or a desire for greater religious freedom, sent them to America.

### ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS.

1. **Frobisher**.—Eighty years passed after the voyages of the Cabots before any English navigators again explored North America. In the year 1576 **MARTIN FROBISHER**, in search of a north-west passage to India, entered the straits that bear his name. We see that one of the great ideas of these times was still the India trade.

2. **New Albion—Drake**.—In 1579 Sir **FRANCIS DRAKE** was cruising in the Pacific in pursuit of plunder from Spanish merchant-ships. Sailing north, along the coast of California, he named it **NEW ALBION**. He then entered and explored the Bay of San Francisco, hoping to find a passage to the Atlantic. He then returned to England by way of the Cape of Good Hope.

3. **Gilbert**.—About the same time an English gentleman, Sir **HUMPHREY GILBERT**, became desirous of plant-

10. Give the summary to the year 1541.

11. Mention the permanent settlements. What is said of those in French Carolina? Where was the French foothold?

12. Who were the early settlers? What prompted the emigration?

1. What exploration was made in 1576? What was its object? What does this show? How long was this after the Cabots?

2. Where was Drake in 1579? What explorations did he make? What did he hope to find?

ing a colony in America. For this purpose he received from Queen Elizabeth the grant of a large tract of land on the continent. In 1583 he sailed with three vessels. After taking possession of the Island of Newfoundland in the name of the queen, he sailed toward the main-land, near which one of his vessels was lost. The other two then put back to Europe. The one in which Sir Humphrey sailed foundered, and all on board perished.

4. **Walter Raleigh** (*raw'li*), a half-brother of Gilbert, took up the plan of colonization where Gilbert's death had left it. Being a courtier, and a great favorite of Queen Elizabeth, he readily obtained an ample patent.

5. **Amidas and Barlow.**—In 1584 Raleigh sent out two vessels, under AMIDAS and BARLOW, to trade with the natives and explore the country. They coasted along Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, and returned to England with a very favorable account of the region. It was named Virginia, in honor of the virgin queen; and Raleigh received the honor of knighthood from Elizabeth.

6. **First Colony—Lane.**—He immediately went to work with energy to plant a colony. Seven ships were sent out under Grenville in 1585. He landed at Roanoke Island, where he left one hundred and ten men under RALPH LANE. They nearly died from starvation in the year that followed, and, at their urgent entreaty, were carried back to England by Sir Francis Drake, who was cruising near the coast, looking for his friend Raleigh's colony.

7. **Second Colony—White.**—A second and more vigorous attempt was made by Raleigh in 1587. In that year JOHN WHITE left one hundred and seventeen men, women, and children on Roanoke Island, and sailed back to

---

3. Who was Gilbert, and what object did he have in view? What grant did he receive? What did he accomplish?

4. Who adopted Gilbert's scheme? Who was Raleigh? What did he obtain?

5. Whom did Raleigh send out? What did they explore? What was the result? What title was given him?

6. What preparations did Raleigh make? Who was left in charge of the colony? How many were there? How did the colony succeed?



England for supplies. Three years passed before he returned, and then no vestige of the colony was to be found.

8. **Raleigh gives up his Patent.**—Raleigh had spent nearly \$200,000 in his attempts to settle a colony in Virginia. He was now deeply in debt, and assigned his patent to some citizens of London. These Londoners did not attempt to settle any colonies, but contented themselves with sending trading-vessels to the coast.

9. **Gosnold—Pring.**—In one of these ships GOSNOLD, in 1602, discovered and named Cape Cod, Nantucket, Martha's Vineyard, and the Elizabeth Islands. He was followed by a trading-vessel under PRING in 1603, who explored a large part of the coast of Maine.

10. **Virginia divided.**—King James I., who succeeded Elizabeth, confiscated Raleigh's patent, and paid no attention to the interests of those to whom Raleigh had assigned it. He then, in 1606, divided Virginia, which was, in fact, the entire English claim on the continent, into two parts—NORTH and SOUTH VIRGINIA. To the LONDON COMPANY he gave South Virginia, extending from the 34th to the 38th degree north latitude. To the PLYMOUTH COMPANY he gave North Virginia, extending from the 41st to the 45th degree.

11. **London Company.**—The object that both companies had in view was the colonization of the country. The London Company was the first to move. An expedition was sent out late in 1606, which resulted in the planting of the colony of Jamestown, May, 1607. An account of this will be found in the history of Virginia.

12. **Summary of English Explorations.**—Of the three

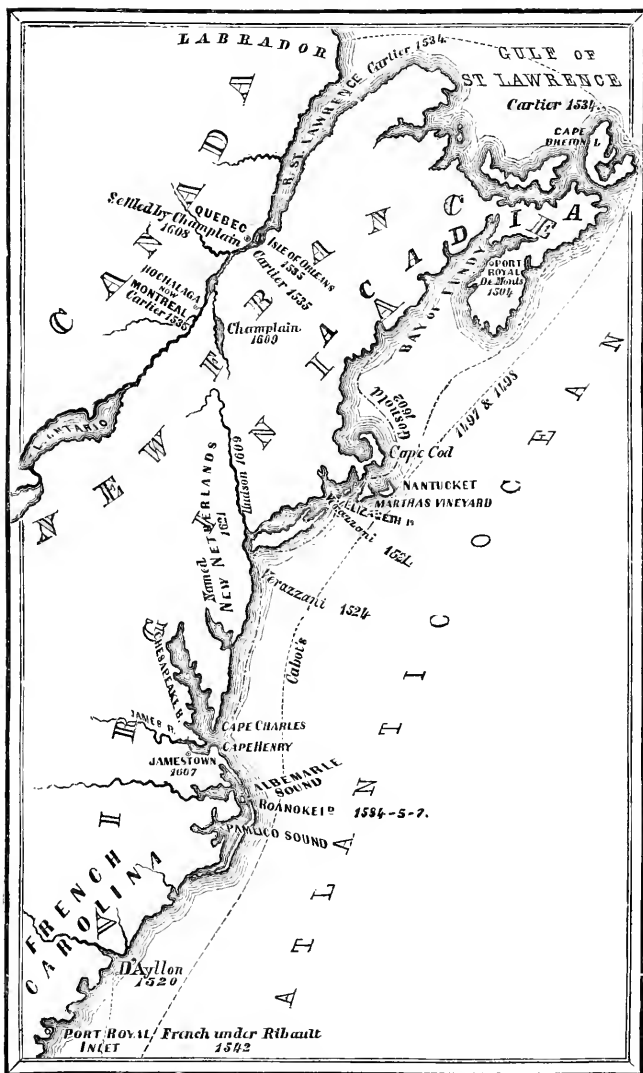
7. When and where was the second attempt made? What is its history?

8. How much had Raleigh spent on Virginia? What was he forced to do? What use did the new owners make of the patent?

9. What was accomplished by Gosnold? What by Pring? Where are these places discovered by Gosnold?

10. What finally became of Raleigh's patent? What was done with Virginia by the king? What was the extent of these grants?

11. What did these companies mean to do with the country? Which of them moved first? When, and with what result?



### EARLY DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

maritime nations, SPAIN, FRANCE, and ENGLAND, the last was the least active in America for nearly a century after the voyages of the Cabots.

13. The chief points to be borne in mind are, 1. EXPLORATION of CALIFORNIA—New Albion—and the Bay of San Francisco, 1579; 2. ATTEMPTED SETTLEMENTS on Roanoke Island, 1584, 1587; 3. EXPLORATION of the coast of MASSACHUSETTS, 1602; 4. DIVISION of VIRGINIA by King James I. into North and South Virginia, and the GRANTS to the London and Plymouth Companies; 5. the FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENT, one hundred and ten years after Cabot's voyage, at JAMESTOWN, 1607.

14. General Summary of Claims on this Continent. — The period just gone over properly ends with the settlement of Jamestown in 1607. But a Dutch vessel, commanded by Hudson, discovered and explored the Hudson River in the year 1609. (See page 43.) In order, therefore, to obtain a clearer idea of European claims on this continent, the summary includes that year.

15. Four European nations claimed portions of the continent by discovery or exploration—the SPANIARDS, FRENCH, ENGLISH, and DUTCH. The SPANISH claim of FLORIDA stretched northward without any definite limits. It was chiefly based on the expedition of De Leon. The FRENCH claim, under the name of NEW FRANCE, extended from New York to Labrador, and was founded on the voyage of Verrazani. During the following century it was extended to the great lakes and the entire Mississippi valley. The ENGLISH claim of VIRGINIA stretched from Florida as far as Labrador, and was based on the voyages of the Cabots.

16. All these three nations claimed westward to the Pacific Ocean. SPAIN claimed the PACIFIC COAST by exploration. The DUTCH claim, named NEW NETHERLAND,

---

12. What is said of the activity of the English?

13. Mention the principal points to be borne in mind.

14. How many and what European nations claimed parts of North America?

15. What was the Spanish claim? The French? The English?

in the year 1614 was based on Hudson's discovery, and extended from the 40th to the 45th degree north latitude.

17. Let us notice how all this affected the ENGLISH. The FRENCH claim overlapped Virginia on the north and west. The DUTCH claim entered it like a wedge, up the Hudson, spreading out as has been already stated. The SPANISH claim stretched up over the southern border. The French and Dutch claims gave the English most trouble, and their disputes about territory were finally settled at the cannon's mouth.

#### TABLE OF PRINCIPAL DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS NORTH OF THE GULF OF MEXICO.

Voyages from Labrador to Florida.....	Cabots .....	1497-1498.
Exploration of the Gulf of St. Lawrence.....	Denys.....	1506.
Discovery of Florida.....	De Leon.....	1512.
Exploration of the coast north of Florida.....	Verrazani .....	1524.
Exploration of Florida. The Mississippi discovered.	De Soto .....	1539-1542.
Exploration of New Mexico.....	Coronado.....	1540.
Exploration of Pacific Coast.....	Cabrillo .....	1542.
Exploration of New Mexico, Rio Grande.....	Espego.....	1582.
Acadia granted and explored.....	De Monts,...	1603-1604.
Massachusetts coast explored.....	Gosnold.....	1602.
Northern New York entered.....	Champlain.....	1609.
The Hudson River discovered.....	Hudson.....	1609.

#### FIRST PERMANENT SETTLEMENTS.

Florida.....	St. Augustine.....	Melendez.....	Spanish .....	1565.
New Mexico.....	Santa Fé.....	Espego.....	Spanish .....	1582.
Acadia.....	Port Royal.....	De Monts.....	French.....	1605.
Virginia.....	Jamestown.....	Newport.....	English .....	1607.
Canada.....	Quebec.....	Champlain.....	French.....	1608.

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. What ideas had Europeans of the extent of the world previous to the discovery of Columbus?
2. Give an account of the India trade of those early times.
3. To what did it lead, and why?
4. Why is Portugal connected with the mention of this trade?

16. What is said of their western boundaries? Of the Dutch claim?

17. How was the English claim affected by that of the French? By that of the Dutch? How much trouble arose from the Spanish claim? Be prepared to recite, and write out from memory, the above tables.

5. Give the early history of Columbus—the growth of his great idea—and his struggles for assistance.
6. State the connection of Ferdinand and Isabella with Columbus.
7. How many voyages did he make, and when?
8. What was his own belief about his discoveries? Why?
9. Give the story of the naming of America.
10. Give an account of the voyages of the Cabots.
11. What claim was founded on them?
12. Give the leading Spanish expeditions from 1498-1585.
13. Which of these belong to the history of the United States?
14. Narrate De Soto's expedition. How far did Florida extend?
15. What attempts were made by another nation to settle there? With what result?
16. Where else did the French attempt to settle on the coast of America?
17. Name the explorers connected with the St. Lawrence.
18. What did these early French and English explorers hope to find?
19. What Englishman first explored San Francisco Bay? His object?
20. Where and when did the English attempt settlements previous to 1600?
21. Give a brief history of the attempts at Roanoke.
22. Give the dates of—1. the settlement of St. Augustine; 2. Santa Fé; 3. the St. Lawrence; 4. Jamestown; 5. Port Royal; 6. Quebec.
23. With what explorations was Gosnold connected?
24. Who was Henry Hudson?
25. What was the original extent of Virginia?
26. What division was made of Virginia in 1606? To whom granted?
27. What use was made of the grants?
28. How many and what European nations were connected with the North American Continent previous to 1610? Give the extent of their claims.
29. Give a summary of Spanish discovery and explorations.
30. Give a summary of French discovery and explorations.
31. Give a summary of English discovery and explorations.
32. Give, from the table, the principal explorations north of the Gulf of Mexico.



## CHAPTER II.

### COLONIAL HISTORY.

FROM THE SETTLEMENT OF JAMESTOWN, 1607, TO THE COMMENCEMENT  
OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR, 1754.

#### PART I.—VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND.

##### VIRGINIA.

1. **Under the first Charter, 1606-1609.**—In the division of the territory of Virginia, South Virginia was given to the London Company. In December, 1606, shortly after receiving this grant, they sent out three vessels, under Christopher Newport, to form a settlement at Roanoke Island. This was the place where the English had already met with so many disasters.

2. **The Voyage.**—A storm drove the vessels north of this point, and they entered Chesapeake Bay. They finally sailed up the River Powhatan, and on a spot fifty

1. What grant was given to the London Company? What use did they make of it?

miles from its mouth they formed a settlement, May, 1607. This, in honor of the king, they called Jamestown, and the river they named the James.

**3. Character of the Settlers.**—There were 105 men in all, but, for the most part, they were poorly fitted to found a colony in an unbroken wilderness, being quite unused to labor. They had no wives nor families with them, and came only to dig gold, and then return to England to enjoy it. They landed in May, and by September following fifty of them had died of disease and exposure.

**4. Government of the Colony.**—The little colony was governed by a council of seven, selected by King James before the colonists left England. Of the members of this council by far the ablest was John Smith; but the others were jealous of him, and put him under arrest while on board ship. On their arrival at Jamestown, they at first prevented him from taking his seat in the council, but Smith soon compelled them to receive him.

**5. Smith saves the Colony.**—When the colony seemed to be going to ruin, in the fall of 1607, and the other councilors were unable to regulate its affairs, the settlers were glad enough to put every thing into the hands of Smith. He was a brave, energetic, and cheerful man. He gained the confidence of the Indians, and obtained supplies of corn. He raised the spirits of the settlers by persuading them to build log-houses, and in this way kept them from brooding over their troubles. At length affairs began to brighten under his management.

**6. His Capture by the Indians.**—While he was exploring the River Chickahominy, in the winter, he was taken prisoner by the Indians. There is a romantic story that

---

2. Where and when did they settle? Why did they change their intention? What names were given?

3. What is said of the settlers? What befell them in a few months?

4. What is said of the government of the colony? What occurred on their voyage, and after their arrival?

5. In what way did Smith rise into importance in the colony? What is said of his conduct and influence?

his life was saved by a young girl, Pocahontas, the daughter of the chief Powhatan, who threw herself between Smith and the clubs of his executioners. Whether this be true or not, Smith was not killed by the Indians, but was allowed to return to Jamestown after an absence of seven weeks.

7. **Smith again saves the Colony.**—On his arrival, he found every thing in disorder. Some of the colonists were preparing to escape to England in the little vessel belonging to the company. Smith was able to prevent their doing this; and in a short time, though not without threats of severity, he succeeded once more in reducing the colony to order.

8. **New Settlers—Smith's Explorations.**—There arrived from England in the spring of 1608 about one hundred and twenty colonists, who were no better than the first. They spent their time digging and washing some "glittering earth," which they mistook for gold. With this they loaded the vessels to be sent back to England. Smith warned them of their folly, but it was of no use, and he started to explore the Chesapeake Bay and the rivers that flow into it. After sailing more than three thousand miles, he returned to Jamestown. The map that he made of the bay is still preserved.

9. **The Company complain.**—The company in London were beginning to grow impatient. They had received no return for the money they had spent on the colony, and they sent out a very angry letter to Jamestown. Smith, who was now President of the Council, wrote back that "it were better to send out thirty working-men than a thousand like the present colonists."

10. **The Second Charter—1609 to 1612.**—In 1609 the com-

---

6. What occurred on the Chickahominy?

7. What did Smith find on his return to Jamestown? How did he act?

8. What addition was made to the colony? In what way did they busy themselves? How did Smith employ himself meanwhile? What was the extent of his voyage?

9. What is said of the London Company? How did Smith reply?



pany obtained from the crown a new and more favorable charter. They at once determined to act with greater vigor, and in the summer of 1609 sent out nine ships, with five hundred colonists. Lord Delaware was appointed governor, but he did not sail with the ships.

**11. The new Emigrants at Jamestown.**—One of these ships, carrying the commissioners who were to govern the colony until the arrival of Lord Delaware, was stranded on the Bermudas, and compelled to remain all winter. Seven of the vessels arrived at Jamestown in the month of August. Among the passengers there was no person of authority, and they refused to obey Smith, asserting that Lord Delaware had been appointed governor. But Smith told them that he would act as governor until Delaware's arrival. This he did, notwithstanding their threats, and brought them quickly to obedience.

**12. Smith leaves the Colony—the Starving-time.**—This was not long, however. In October he was severely wounded by an explosion of a small bag of gunpowder, and was compelled to sail to England for surgical aid. Soon after Smith left, every thing ran rapidly to ruin. The provisions were wasted; sickness spread rapidly; and of five hundred persons there remained only sixty when the winter was past. These terrible winter months of 1609–1610 were long remembered in the colony as the “starving-time.”

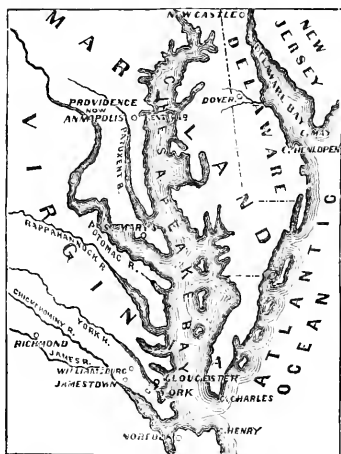
**13. The Colony saved—1610.**—In May the shipwrecked men arrived from the Bermudas, and saved the miserable remnant from death. But they brought only a small stock of provisions, and in June they all concluded to leave Jamestown and disperse among the fishing-vessels off Newfoundland. Before they left the river, Lord Delaware arrived with provisions and settlers. He persua-

---

10. What change took place in 1609? What effect had this on the company?

11. What happened to the expedition? How did the new settlers behave? What did Smith do?

12. What unfortunate occurrence soon took place, and when? What effect was produced by Smith's leaving? By what name was this long known?



EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND.

ded them to return, and Jamestown was once more saved.

**14. Third Charter—1612 to 1624.**—An important change was made in the charter of the company in the year 1612. The members were allowed more voice in the management of its affairs. It thus became more democratic, and was less under the influence of the king. But this did not greatly help the growth of the colony.

**15. Tobacco-planting.**—

The first thing that gave life and vigor to Jamestown came from its own settlers. In 1615 the cultivation of tobacco began, and spread with great rapidity. The settlers found a ready market for the plant in Europe, where Raleigh had introduced the custom of smoking thirty years before. We can see how valuable the staple became, for it was used as the currency of the colony.

**16. First Colonial Assembly.**—In 1619 the first colonial assembly of Virginia met at Jamestown. It was composed of planters or “burgesses,” elected from districts called “boroughs.”

**17. Importation of Women.**—That which put the colony on a still firmer footing was the arrival of a number of young women, who became wives to the planters. They

13. What did the remainder do in the spring? How were they saved?

14. What change took place in 1612? What rights did it grant?

15. What plant became the staple of the colony? When was it first cultivated? From what circumstance can we see its value?

16. In what year did the first colonial assembly of Virginia meet? Where? Of what was it composed?

were sent out in 1619, as a business speculation, and the purchasers paid 100 lbs. of tobacco, worth then about \$75, for a wife. The consignment paid so well that more were sent out in 1621, who were readily disposed of for 150 lbs. of tobacco apiece.

**18. Negro Slavery—Cotton first planted.**—Two events of vast importance in the after-history of America occurred about the same time. In the year 1620 a Dutch trading-vessel arrived at Jamestown, with twenty NEGROES. These were sold as slaves to the settlers. This was the beginning of negro slavery in the English colonies. In the year 1621 some seeds of COTTON were first planted at Jamestown as an experiment. Its cultivation did not spread, however, for many years.

**19. Indian Massacre.**—The settlers were at last beginning to be prosperous and contented. The plantations, or collections of farms, numbered eighty, and stretched to a considerable distance from Jamestown. The Indians, who had thus been pushed back, looked with hatred on the white men, who had their lands, and in 1622 fell suddenly on the settlers with frightful vengeance. In one morning three hundred and forty-seven persons were killed, and the number of plantations was reduced from eighty to eight. The Indians, after a long and bloody war, were finally driven back from the settlements.

**20. London Company dissolved—Second Indian War.**—The disasters of the colony produced quarrels among the London stockholders. King James I. shortly dissolved the company, and declared the charter forfeited to the crown. Virginia then became a royal province, after being seventeen years under the London Company. In 1644 the Indians a second time suddenly attacked and mas-

17. What important cargoes arrived in 1620 and 1621? What is said of these? How did they benefit the colony?

18. What other arrival was there in 1620? What seeds were first planted about this time?

19. What broke out in 1622? How far did the colonists expect this? What was the extent of the disaster, and the final result?

sacred the settlers. Another Indian war followed, at the end of which the savages were compelled to submit.

**21. Virginia under the Parliament.**—The great civil war in England broke out during the reign of King James's son, Charles I. The king quarreled with his Parliament, and war followed. The latter triumphed, and beheaded Charles. Cromwell then came into power as Protector of England. During the struggle Virginia remained loyal to the crown.

**22. The Navigation Act.**—For this loyalty his son Charles II. showed little gratitude when he was placed on the throne. In 1660 was passed the Navigation Act, a most oppressive measure, which was made still more so in 1663. By this act the American colonists were compelled to ship their staples to England alone. They were forced also to buy all their European goods there. Still more, the carrying-trade was confined to English vessels. The act pressed heavily on the productions of Virginia, which were increasing rapidly.

**23. Bacon's Rebellion.**—The colonists were far from being at peace among themselves. The rich planters and officeholders levied taxes for their own benefit, and the mass of the people had to pay them. An Indian war broke out in the year 1676, and this gave the people an opportunity of showing their feelings. Governor Berkeley refused to give them arms for their defense. Thereupon 500 men rallied around a young man by the name of Bacon, and marched against the Indians. Berkeley immediately proclaimed Bacon a rebel. Bacon, in turn, attacked and defeated Berkeley. In the struggle, the village of Jamestown was burnt—never to be rebuilt.

---

20. To what event did these misfortunes lead? How was the colony under the company? How many charters were there?

21. How was Virginia affected by the civil war in England? From what did this war arise? What was its result?

22. How did Charles II. treat the American Colonies? Describe some of the provisions of the Navigation Act.

23. From what other cause did the colonists have trouble? When and in what way did these reach a crisis? Describe what followed.

**24. Bacon's Death—Berkeley's Revenge.**—While in the midst of his success, Bacon suddenly died. He was the life of his party, and his followers, being left without a leader, scattered to their homes. Berkeley came again into power, and hanged twenty-three of the rebels, as he called them. So cruel did his conduct seem to the easy-going king, Charles II., that the latter said of him, "The old fool has hanged more men in that naked country than I did in England for the murder of my father."

**25. Virginia granted to two Favorites.**—In 1673 Virginia was granted to two royal favorites, Lords Arlington and Culpepper, for thirty-one years. Culpepper finally obtained the entire grant, and was appointed governor for life in 1677. In 1684 he surrendered his patent to the crown. Virginia thus again became a royal province, and so remained until the American Revolution.

#### MARYLAND.

**1. The Grant.**—The territory of Maryland was originally a part of Virginia. In the year 1632 King Charles I. granted to George Calvert—Lord Baltimore—a tract of land north of the Potomac. To this was given the name of Maryland, in honor of the queen, Henrietta Maria.

**2. The Charter—its Liberality.**—Lord Baltimore's purpose was to found in America a colony for persecuted Catholics. He died, however, before the patent for the grant received the king's seal, and it was made out in the name of Cecil, his son. The charter was the first that secured to the people of any colony in America the right to make their own laws. It also declared that all Christian sects should enjoy equal rights throughout the territory of Maryland.

---

24. How did the rebellion end? What is said of Berkeley's conduct?

25. What occurred in 1673? How long had it been a royal province? How long did it remain under the new proprietors?

1. What is said of the territory of Maryland? What of the grant? To whom made, and when? Why named Maryland? Where is the Potomac?

2. What was the object of Lord Baltimore? What is remarkable about the charter?

3. **Opposing Claim.**—Meanwhile one William Clayborne, from Virginia, had already established, under license from the king, two trading-posts within the limits of Maryland. One of these was at the mouth of the Susquehanna, the other on an island in the Chesapeake. Clayborne felt that Baltimore's grant interfered with his right.

4. **First Settlers—Trouble with Clayborne.**—In February, 1634, Leonard Calvert, brother of Lord Baltimore, arrived in Chesapeake Bay with a company of Catholics. On March 27 he settled on the site of an Indian village, which he named St. Mary's. Clayborne soon began to quarrel with the colonists; but was compelled to flee to Virginia. In 1644 he returned, and, after a short struggle, Governor Calvert was compelled to flee. Then, in 1646, Calvert returned, and drove off Clayborne.

5. **The Toleration Act.**—The year 1649 is celebrated in the history of Maryland for the passage of the "Toleration Act." This famous law secured to all Christians the right to worship God according to their own consciences, which right had already been embodied in the charter.

6. **Fresh Trouble from Clayborne.**—In the year 1652 Clayborne, the old enemy of the colony, reappeared in Maryland. He came as one of the commissioners from the Parliament of England sent out to look after "the plantations within Chesapeake Bay." These men forced the governor, Stone, to resign; and when his friends took up arms, the latter were defeated, and several of the chief men were hung.

7. **Maryland a Royal Province.**—For three years the colony was in constant turmoil with the quarrels between Protestants and Catholics. There were two governments,

---

3. Who claimed a part of the territory? By what right?

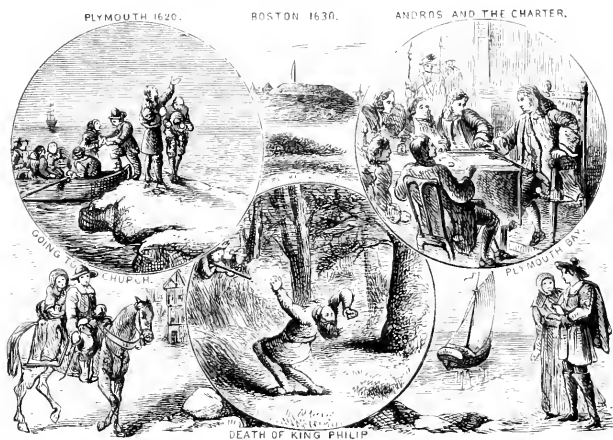
4. Where and when did the first colonists settle? Who led them? State the troubles that soon followed.

5. What important act was passed, and when? Why was its mention in the charter not enough?

6. When and how did Clayborne return? What took place?

and almost hopeless confusion. Finally, in 1660, the friends of Lord Baltimore gained the mastery. This continued until 1691, when King William III. made Maryland a royal province, and it remained so for twenty-one years.

8. **Proprietary Government.**—In 1715 the fourth Lord Baltimore was restored to his rights. At his death the territory passed into the hands of the fifth Lord Baltimore, who continued proprietor until the Revolution.



## PART II.—NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

### MASSACHUSETTS.

1. **Exploration of North Virginia.**—By the charter of King James I., North Virginia was given to the Plymouth Company. In the fall of 1607 they sent some settlers to the mouth of the Kennebec, but these remained only one

7. How long did disturbances continue? What change took place in the government?

8. When was it restored to Lord Baltimore? How long did it remain under proprietors?

winter. For some years after this the coast was visited only by fishing or trading vessels. The famous JOHN SMITH was engaged in this business off the coast of Massachusetts in the year 1614. In a ship's boat, with eight men, he explored the shores from the Penobscot to Cape Cod, and made a chart of the country, which he named New England.

2. The "Great Patent."—On Smith's return to England, he persuaded the Plymouth Company to apply to the king for a new grant. This they obtained in the year 1620, and it was known as the "Great Patent." It gave to forty noble and influential persons, as "the Council for New England," the whole country between the 40th and 48th degrees of north latitude, westward to the Pacific, and covering more than 1,000,000 square miles.

3. The Puritan "Pilgrims."—The first permanent settlement on this tract was not made under the Council for New England, but by a small band of persecuted English Protestants, called Puritans. They first went from England to Amsterdam, in Holland, in 1608; thence they removed to Leyden (*li'-den*), and from their wanderings they assumed the name of "Pilgrims." Soon wearying of Holland, with its foreign language and manners, and being very poor, they determined to emigrate to America. With much difficulty they obtained from the London Company a small grant of land in South Virginia.

4. The Speedwell and Mayflower.—They bought a little vessel, which they named the Speedwell. In this a portion of them sailed from Delft Haven in 1620, and landed first at Southampton, in England. Here they were joined by the Mayflower, with another band of "Pilgrims" from London, and then sailed for America.

---

1. To what company was North Virginia given? What use did they make of their grant? What explorations were made?

2. What new grant was given, and when? By whose persuasion was this sought for?

3. Who first settled on the tract? What is said of them? What grant did they get from the Plymouth Company?

4. State the preparations they made for emigrating.



5. **The Speedwell condemned.**—The Speedwell was quickly found to be leaky, and, after two attempts, both vessels finally put back to Plymouth, where the Speedwell was condemned as unseaworthy. The little Mayflower, crowded with men, women, and children to the number of 101, set sail alone, September 16, 1620.

6. **The Voyage—the Landing.**—We can readily understand what a wearisome voyage it must have been, in this crowded condition, and lasting as it did sixty-three days. The first land they saw was Cape Cod. Though this was far north of the limits of South Virginia, they were so worn out by confinement that they determined to anchor in Cape Cod Harbor. On the 21st of December, 1620, they landed on the place chosen for a settlement, and named it NEW PLYMOUTH.

7. **Their Form of Government.**—This spot was within the limits of the Plymouth Company's tract, where they had no grant of land or powers of government. They accordingly signed a "compact," or agreement, before they left the Mayflower, "to govern themselves for the common good," and chose JOHN CARVER governor for one year.

8. **Early Sufferings.**—The colonists suffered severely from the effects of their voyage, and from exposure in their new settlement in the cold wintry weather. Half their number died during the first five months; among these was Governor Carver. Fortunately, the Indians proved friendly, and a treaty was made with Massasoit (*mas-sas'o-it*), their chief, early in 1621.

9. **A Charter obtained.**—The colony grew very slowly, and their London friends, who had assisted them with money, began to grow impatient for returns. In the year 1627 the Londoners sold out their interest to leading col-

---

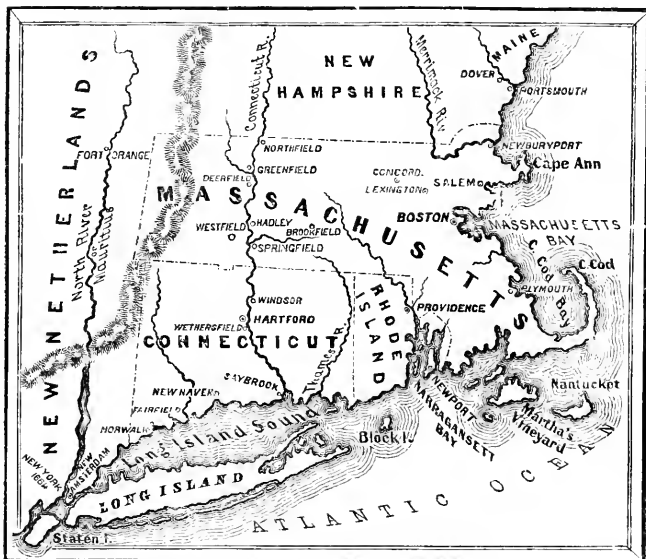
5. Did both vessels sail? Why did both not finally go? How many persons sailed? When?

6. How long was the voyage? Where did they first see land? Where did they anchor, and finally land? Why did they determine to settle here?

7. In what condition did the Pilgrims find themselves? What did they do?

8. How did they bear the climate and the new country? How did the Indians behave?

onists for 9000 dollars. In 1630 a charter, containing a grant of land embracing New Plymouth, was obtained from the Council for New England. The after history of Plymouth Colony is closely connected with that of MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY, on which we now enter.



NEW ENGLAND COLONIES AND PART OF NEW NETHERLANDS.

10. **Endicott's Grant.**—In the year 1628, John Endicott and others obtained from the Council for New England a grant of territory bounded by a line three miles south of the Charles River and Massachusetts Bay, and three miles north of every part of the River Merrimac. Under this grant, a settlement was begun at SALEM the same year. Presently fresh settlers arrived from England, and CHARLESTOWN was founded in 1629.

9. How did the colony succeed? What followed? When did they first obtain a grant of land? How long were they in America without a grant?

10. What grant was obtained in 1628? What places were settled, and when?

**11. Change in the Charter.**—In the charter it was provided that the governor should reside in England. This was changed in 1629, and his residence, together with the charter, was transferred to the colony. Many of the best Puritan families in England at once determined to emigrate; and in 1630, 1500 settlers arrived, some at Salem, and others at Charlestown. A portion of these, under the new governor, JOHN WINTHROP, settled BOSTON.

**12. Early Sufferings.**—Although they were better provided than the New Plymouth colonists, the winter of 1630 made sad havoc among the settlers in Massachusetts Bay. Before December passed, two hundred of them died. But fresh arrivals came, and the colony grew rapidly.

**13. Religious Intolerance.**—The Puritans had sought America to obtain religious freedom; but when they arrived here, they allowed little difference in opinion among themselves. Roger Williams, minister of the Salem Church, claimed that no power on earth could bind the conscience of men in religion. For this and other opinions he was banished from the colony in the year 1635. Another instance will show how far they carried this intolerance. An able woman, Mrs. Hutchinson, held meetings of her own sex, where she advanced new views on religious matters. This was not to be permitted, and in 1637 she also was sentenced to banishment. Such a sentence meant the sufferings of the wilderness, and the company of Indians.

**14. Harvard College founded.**—In 1637 the freemen of the colony, meeting in "General Court," set apart about 1000 dollars to found a seminary at Newtown. Two years after John Harvard left to this school his library

11. What important change was made in 1629? How did this affect the colony? What place was now settled, and when?

12. What is said of their early sufferings?

13. For what chiefly had the Pilgrims and Puritans come to America? How did they treat those who differed from them? State about Williams. Give the particulars of Mrs. Hutchinson's case. What did banishment mean?

and nearly 4000 dollars besides. It was then named Harvard College, and the name of Newtown was changed to Cambridge, the seat of a famous English university.

**15. New England Union.**—Three colonies, settled principally from Massachusetts, had in the mean time sprung into existence. These were New Haven, Connecticut, and Rhode Island. In the year 1643 the colonies of Plymouth, Massachusetts Bay, New Haven, and Connecticut formed a UNION for mutual protection against the Dutch of New Netherlands, French, and Indians. This lasted for more than forty years. Rhode Island was refused admission because she would not acknowledge the authority of Plymouth Colony, which claimed the territory.

**16. Religious Persecution.**—Some members of a persecuted sect called Quakers arrived from England in 1656. They held peculiar views, the spread of which the Massachusetts authorities thought to stop by banishing the Quakers from the colony. This only brought greater numbers, of whom four were hanged, and many were imprisoned and cruelly punished. They gloried in their sufferings, and their steadfastness and patience at last wrought such a change on popular feeling that the persecution was stopped.

**17. Navigation Act.**—New England felt severely the oppression of the Navigation Act mentioned in the history of Virginia. The colonists had already a thriving business in ship-building and commerce. This was ruined by the Act, and the loss naturally produced great indignation against the mother country.

**18. The Indians—King Philip.**—The treaty of peace with the Indians continued unbroken until the year 1675.

---

14. Give the origin and founding of Harvard College. What was the old name of Cambridge, and why changed?

15. What important UNION was formed? What was its object? How long did it last?

16. Who were the Quakers? What is said of their treatment in Massachusetts?

17. How did the Navigation Act affect Massachusetts? State the provisions of this act. See Virginia.

Massasoit, the old chief, died, and his son Philip became his successor. Philip had long brooded over the growing power of the whites, and the loss of the hunting-grounds of his tribe. The colonists, on the other hand, were too ready to believe that Philip was their enemy.

19. **King Philip's War.**—A converted Indian, who lived with Philip, told the Plymouth people that the Indian chief was plotting their destruction. Soon after the informer was found murdered. Then the colonists hung three Indians charged with the crime. Philip, in revenge, attacked Swanzy, 35 miles southwest from Plymouth, in June, 1675, and killed some settlers. The colonists flew to arms. Philip united the New England tribes, and soon along the frontier settlements on and near the Connecticut fire and blood marked the track of the Indians.

20. **End of the War—Death of Philip.**—The war continued until August, 1676. Philip made the most extraordinary exertions, but the energy, resources, and numbers of the colonists prevailed. Philip, broken-spirited, and almost alone, went back to his old home at Mount Hope, where he was shot, in August, by a treacherous Indian. His little son was sold as a slave. This ended what is known as King Philip's War.

21. **The Charter annulled.**—The people of Boston, in resisting the "Navigation Act," compelled one of the officers of customs to return to England. King Charles II. at once resented this as an affront, and, to punish the colony, proceeded to annul the charter of Massachusetts. He died before this was done, and his successor, James II., completed the work.

22. **Royal Government.**—The charters of the other New England colonies were also taken away, and Ed-

---

18. Who was King Philip? What is said of his feelings toward the whites?

19. What directly brought on the war? How did Philip revenge this? How far did hostilities extend?

20. How long did they continue? Describe the last days of Philip. How long did the war last? Where was Mount Hope?

21. What important change occurred? Why was this?

mund Andros, "the tyrant," as he was called, was appointed royal governor of New England in 1686. When his master, King James, was expelled from the throne in 1688, the Massachusetts people heard the news with great rejoicing, and quickly sent off the tyrannical Andros to England under arrest.

**23. First Intercolonial War—King William's.**—The expulsion of James from the English throne was followed by the reign of William of Orange, known as William III. This change involved the English colonies in a war with the French on their borders. The French king took up the cause of the exiled James, and proclaimed war against England in 1689. The French colonists united with the Indians, and attacked the settlements of New York and New Hampshire.

**24. Principal Events.**—The English colonists were not idle. In 1690 Massachusetts sent out an expedition against Acadia, which captured Port Royal, and returned with a great amount of plunder. A second expedition, by land and water, proved a costly failure. The war was ended by the treaty of Ryswick (*riz'wik*) in 1697, and Acadia was restored to France.

**25. Salem Witchcraft.**—While the war was going on, a remarkable delusion broke out at Salem on the subject of witchcraft, in 1692. It spread rapidly through the colony, and before long nearly one hundred persons were in prison, charged with what was called the crime. At first they were principally old women that were arrested. Soon charges were made against some of the first families in the colony, and a special court tried and hanged twenty of the prisoners. One of the hanged was a clergyman. When the excitement reached its height, eight persons were under sentence of death, and the jails

---

22. What events followed? Who was appointed governor? How was his administration brought to an end?

23. What involved the French and English colonies in war? Why then is this called King William's War?

24. Mention the principal events. By what was it closed?

were full of prisoners awaiting trial. This excessive severity worked a cure; the people began to see their folly, and in 1693 all the prisoners were discharged.

**26. Massachusetts under Royal Government.**—Another important event took place during the war. In the year 1692 Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia were united in one province, under the name of Massachusetts. From this time onward to the Revolution the colony remained under royal government.

**27. Second Intercolonial War—Queen Anne's.**—King William's War ended in 1697. Five years after, war broke out in Europe between England and France, and the colonies in America were forced into the quarrel. The war sprang out of the conduct of the French king, Louis XIV. When James, the exiled English monarch, died in France, Louis proclaimed his son king of England. This was deemed by the English an insult to Queen Anne, and war was declared in 1702.

**28. Principal Events.**—In America the suffering fell chiefly on the frontier inhabitants of New England and South Carolina. The active operations of the Northern colonies were directed against the French in Acadia and Canada. Port Royal, in Acadia, was captured in 1710. The expedition against Canada proved a failure. Hostilities were terminated by the treaty of Utrecht (*ú-trekt*), in 1713. By it Great Britain gained Acadia, which was made a province, under the old name of Nova Scotia.

**29. Third Intercolonial War—King George's.**—Thirty years of peace followed. George II. now reigned in England. Disputes arose in Europe about the succession to the Austrian throne, and France and England took op-

25. When and how did the witchcraft excitement arise? To what length did this extend? How was it stopped?

26. How long did Massachusetts govern itself after Andros left? What happened in 1692?

27. When did Queen Anne's War begin? What was the cause of it? How many years were there between this and King William's War?

28. Give the principal events. How long did it last? What territory did Great Britain gain on this continent by the treaty?

posite sides. War followed, and the colonies in North America were once more compelled to fight in a European quarrel.

**30. Principal Event.**—The war began in 1744. The principal event in America was the capture of the strong French fortress of Louisburg, on Cape Breton (*brit'-un*) Island. This success was very gratifying to the Northern colonies, because the capture was mainly the result of their own efforts. It surrendered June 28, 1745.

**31. End of the War—its Results.**—The war was ended in 1748 by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (*akes-lă-shă-pel*), in Prussia. Louisburg, the capture of which had cost the colonies so much effort, was restored to France.

These three wars have been placed in the history of Massachusetts, because she was the most powerful New England colony. But all the New England colonies joined actively in them, and bore their own share of suffering.

#### CONNECTICUT.

**1. The Connecticut Grant.**—The Council of Plymouth in the year 1630 granted to the Earl of Warwick a tract of land extending one hundred and twenty miles along the coast west of the Narragansett River, and from the Atlantic to the Pacific. Next year he transferred the grant to Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke, with other English gentlemen.

**2. Dutch Claim—English settle Windsor.**—The Dutch of New Netherlands claimed the land along the Connecticut River. In the year 1633 they built a block-house, on the present site of Hartford, to command the valley. Some traders from New Plymouth, not heeding this, sail-

29. What was the cause of King George's War? How many years had passed since?

30. What were the principal events?

31. What ended the war? How many years did it last? What is said of one of the places captured during the war? Why are these three wars given under Massachusetts Colony?

1. When and to whom was the grant of the present State of Connecticut made? What was its extent? What change in proprietors took place?



ed past the fort, and set up a trading-house at Windsor the same year. Two years after sixty emigrants came across the wilderness from Massachusetts, and settled near these traders.

3. **Saybrook Colony.**—In the same year, 1635, a fort was built at the mouth of the river to close it against the Dutch. It was named after the two proprietors, Say and Brooke. This was the beginning of Saybrook Colony.

4. **Connecticut Colony.**—Next year, 1636, one hundred persons from the neighborhood of Boston, under the Rev. Thomas Hooker, settled at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield. The settlements took the name of the Connecticut Colony, and were under the protection of Massachusetts.

5. **Pequod War.**—These settlements were scarcely begun, before the Pequod Indians commenced depredations around the Saybrook Colony. This was toward the close of the year 1636. Next year they extended their ravages up the river as far as Wethersfield. The Connecticut towns promptly raised a force of some eighty men for their defense, and placed them under Captain Mason. He pushed the war with so much vigor that by the end of the year 1637 nine hundred Pequods had perished, and the tribe was exterminated.

6. **Government of the Colony.**—In 1639 the settlers agreed on a plan of government. It was based on the great idea that all power springs from the people. Under this agreement, all residents of good character were declared freemen. Every officer was chosen by these freemen. The Connecticut Colony is therefore the first example of a pure democratic form of government in America.

---

2. Who claimed a large part of the territory? How did they attempt to keep it? What is said of the English settlement? Where did the settlers come from?

3. What was the origin of Saybrook Colony? Why so named?

4. Describe the origin of Connecticut Colony. Was it independent at first?

5. When and where did an Indian war break out? Give the progress and result of the war. How long did it last?

6. What is said of the government of Connecticut Colony? Why is it remarkable?

7. **New Haven Colony** was founded in the year 1638 by a body of emigrants under the Rev. John Davenport and Theophilus Eaton. The first place of settlement was at **NEW HAVEN**, on land purchased from the Indians. It was a purely religious colony; that is, the Bible was made the only rule of government, and only members of the church were allowed to be freemen. In this we see it was quite different from the Connecticut Colony.

8. **Union into one Colony.**—Until the year 1644 there were three colonies within the limits of the present State of Connecticut. In that year the remaining proprietor of Saybrook Colony sold his interest therein to the Connecticut Colony. In the year 1665 New Haven was united to Connecticut, under the most liberal charter ever given to any of the colonies. Its provisions were nearly the same as those adopted by the people in 1639, and it was so perfect that no change was made in it for many years after Connecticut became a State.

9. **Attempt to seize the Charter.**—Andros, the royal governor of New England, already spoken of, tried to get possession of this famous charter. In 1687 he went to Hartford, where the Connecticut Assembly were in session, and demanded that it should be given to him. It was brought out and placed on the table. The discussion that followed was long and earnest, and ran into the night. Suddenly the lights were extinguished. In the darkness a trusty hand carried off the precious parchment and hid it in the hollow of a tree, which was famous for more than 150 years after as the Charter Oak. When Andros was expelled from New England, the charter was taken from its hiding-place, and the old government was quietly resumed.

---

7. When and by whom was New Haven founded? How did it differ from Connecticut Colony?

8. How many and what colonies were there in Connecticut? When were these reduced to two? When was there but one? What is said of the charter?

9. What story is told about it? Who was Andros? Has he been spoken of before? Where? See page 36.

10. **Yale College founded.**—In the year 1701 a school for the education of ministers was established at Saybrook. It was afterward removed to New Haven, and named **YALE COLLEGE**, after its first patron, Elihu Yale.

#### RHODE ISLAND.

1. **Roger Williams**, minister of the church at Salem, was banished from Massachusetts in the year 1635. He made his way, in the depth of winter, to the Narragansett Indians, who gave him shelter and welcome, and also a grant of land on the east side of Pawtucket River.

2. **Providence settled.**—Learning that this was within the limits of the Plymouth grant, he and five companions removed to the west side of the river in the spring of 1636. In remembrance of “God’s merciful providence to him in his distress,” he named the new settlement **PROVIDENCE**.

3. **The Island of Rhodes settled.**—By the advice of Williams, settlers came from Massachusetts in 1637. They bought the island of Aquidneck from the Indians, and named it the Island of Rhodes. Portsmouth was settled, and in 1639 Newport was founded.

4. **A Charter granted.**—When, in 1643, the New England union was formed, Providence Plantations and Rhode Island were refused admission. Williams thereupon determined to get a charter from the crown. He himself went to England, and in 1644 obtained a charter uniting Providence and Rhode Island in one colony.

5. **Religious Freedom.**—It was some years before the united colonists met and chose a governor. They then, in 1647, agreed on a set of laws, the greatest of which was that celebrated ACT which granted **FREEDOM** of RE-

10. When was Yale College founded? State what is said about it.

1. What led to the founding of Rhode Island Colony? When and where did Williams first reside?

2. Why did he move from this? To what place did he go, and what did he name it?

3. When was the island of Rhodes first settled? At what point? By whom?

4. Why did Williams determine to get a charter? How did he succeed?

LIGIOUS FAITH AND WORSHIP TO ALL SECTS. Roger Williams was determined that no one should be expelled from Rhode Island as he had been from Massachusetts.

6. **The new Charter.**—In 1663 Charles II. confirmed by a new charter all the rights and privileges guaranteed by the first. So liberal was this new instrument, that it continued to be the charter of Rhode Island until 1842.

#### NEW HAMPSHIRE.

1. **Early Settlement.**—The Council of Plymouth in 1622 made a grant of land, lying between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers, to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason. As early as 1623 some feeble fishing-settlements were made at Little Harbor, near the present PORTSMOUTH, and at DOVER.

2. **Proprietary Government.**—In 1629 Mason became sole proprietor, and named the tract New Hampshire, after the shire in England where he lived. He subdivided his grant among a number of proprietors, and there then sprang up endless quarrels about titles.

3. **Colonial Troubles.**—The people at length, in 1641, put themselves under the protection of Massachusetts; but in 1680, at the request of Mason, New Hampshire was made a royal province. Three times it was joined to Massachusetts, and as often restored to a separate provincial government. From 1741 until the Revolution it remained under its own governor.

4. **Sufferings of the Settlers.**—New Hampshire suffered severely from the Indians during the intercolonial wars already mentioned in the history of Massachusetts. The settlers were greatly exposed to the inroads of the sav-

5. When did the colonies unite? What celebrated act did they pass? When was this?

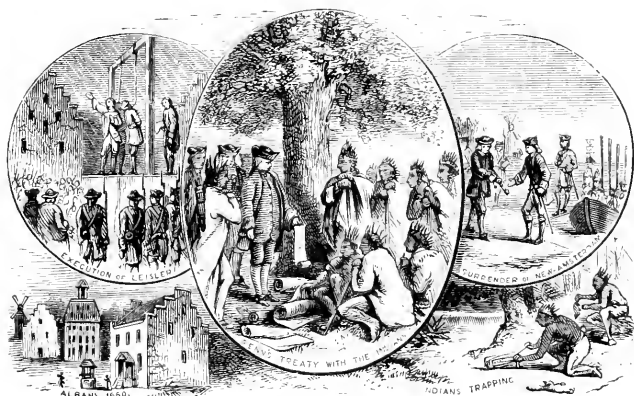
6. What change was made in 1663? What is said of this charter?

1. What grant was made in 1623? What use was made of this?

2. Who became sole proprietor? Why was the country named New Hampshire? What troubles sprang up?

3. Give a sketch of the changes of government. What was the last government of the colony?

ages and the French. The villages were laid waste, and families murdered, but the hardy settlers rallied with renewed energy after every trial.



### PART III.—MIDDLE COLONIES.

#### NEW YORK.

1. **Henry Hudson** entered the Hudson River in the year 1609. This discovery was the foundation of the Dutch claim to **NEW NETHERLAND**, a name which, in 1614, was given by the States of Holland to the territory lying between the 40th and 45th degrees, north latitude. Afterward the name was limited to the country between Cape Henlopen and Cape Cod.

2. **Opposing Claim to the Territory.**—The English regarded this as an interference with their claim, and remonstrated. The States of Holland paid no attention to

4. What is said of the sufferings of the New Hampshire settlers?

1. What was the foundation of the Dutch claim in America? What was its extent and name? Why was this called New Netherlands?

2. Who disputed the Dutch claim, and why? How did the Dutch show their regard for this remonstrance?

this. In 1623 the Dutch built Fort Nassau, on the Delaware, and Fort Orange, near the present site of Albany.

3. **Early Settlements.**—There were a few block huts for the protection of Dutch fishermen on Manhattan Island as early as 1614. The real settlement of the island, however, did not begin until the year 1625. In the following year the Walloons, French Protestants from Holland, settled Long Island, at Wallabout Bay, within the present limits of Brooklyn.

4. **New Amsterdam founded.**—MINUITS was the first “director,” or governor. Under him Fort Amsterdam was built, and the village that sprang up around it was named NEW AMSTERDAM. This was the beginning of the city of New York.

5. **Bad Government of Kieft.**—KIEFT, the third governor, behaved with great cruelty to the Indians. This brought on an Indian war, in 1643, which for years threatened the destruction of the colony. The conduct of Kieft became so bad that he was recalled by the Dutch authorities, and was succeeded by the brave and energetic STUYVESANT (*sti've-sant*), in 1647.

6. **Serious Troubles.**—Stuyvesant had much trying work to do. A colony of Swedes, in 1638, had settled on the Delaware, near the present Wilmington, and built a fort; this was within the limits of New Netherland, and a trespass on the Dutch claim. The Connecticut people were quarreling with the Dutch about boundaries. Worst of all, the colonists, many of whom were settlers from New England, were growing very restless under the severity of Dutch rule.

7. **Energy of Stuyvesant.**—The brave old soldier went to work with spirit. He first settled the boundary line

---

3. Where were the first settlements, and when?

4. Who was the first governor? What was now begun? Of what was this the beginning?

5. What is said of the results of Kieft's rule? When and by whom was he succeeded? Why was this?

6. How many and what troublesome affairs did Stuyvesant encounter?

on the Connecticut side. He then turned his attention to the Swedes. In the year 1655 he took possession of every one of their posts, and reduced them to entire submission. The Swedish Colony existed seventeen years.

8. **New Netherland seized by the English.**—He could not so easily settle affairs with his own colonists. An English fleet, under Colonel Nichols, appeared before New Amsterdam, in 1664, and demanded, in the name of the Duke of York, that the keys of the fort should be given up to him. Stuyvesant refused, but found himself unsupported by the citizens, and the fort was surrendered in opposition to his most earnest entreaties.

9. **The Territory under English Rule.**—The whole region from the Connecticut to the Delaware had been given by King Charles II. to his brother James, duke of York and Albany. On the surrender of New Amsterdam, the name was changed to New York, and Fort Orange to Albany. New Netherland became the province of New York, of which the duke was proprietor.

10. **New York seized by the Dutch.**—The Dutch regained possession of New York in the year 1673, during a war between England and Holland. When the war ended, it passed, by treaty, under English rule, after having been held by the Dutch fifteen months.

11. **Execution of Leisler.**—The colonists gained nothing by the change to English rule. The duke's governors, among whom was Edmund Andros, were much worse than the stern but just Peter Stuyvesant. The execution of Leisler (*Us'ler*) and Milborne, in 1691, produced great excitement in the colony. When William III. ascended the throne, Leisler, with some of the citizens, seized the fort in the name of the new king. William, however, did not

7. How did Stuyvesant settle two of them? How long was this little Swedish colony in existence?

8. What ended Stuyvesant's rule? Why did he not make forcible resistance?

9. Why was New Amsterdam claimed by the Duke of York? What changes took place?

10. What interruption was there to English rule? How long did this last?

sanction what he did, and sent out Col. Sloughter as governor. Leisler was brought to trial for treason, and he and his son-in-law, Milborne, were condemned and executed.

**12. King William's War.**—The northern frontiers suffered severely during King William's war. The French and Indians committed great barbarities. Schenectady was burned, and men, women, and children were tortured and put to death.

**13. The Negro Plot—1741.**—Another event of importance in the early history of the colony was the supposed negro plot to burn the city of New York and massacre the inhabitants. During the excitement thirty persons were executed for their supposed connection with the plot, some of whom were whites. The people, after some time, became ashamed of their cruelty, and common sense resumed its control.

**14. Love of Liberty.**—The colonists of New York endured much from the oppression of the royal governors, some of whom were most unprincipled men. The struggles of the colonists for liberty under these bad rulers prepared them for the trying times of the Revolution.

#### NEW JERSEY.

**1. Early Settlement.**—The present State of New Jersey formed part of the territory of New Netherland. Under the Dutch no active efforts were made to settle the country west of the Hudson. In the same year that the English rule began, 1664, ELIZABETHTOWN was settled under a grant of land from Governor Nichols.

**2. Sale of New Jersey by the Duke.**—Meanwhile the Duke of York had sold the whole tract between the Hudson and the Delaware to Lord Berkeley and Sir

---

11. Did the colonists gain by the change? What governor is mentioned? What event produced great trouble? Describe this.

12. How did King William's War affect the colony? Where is Schenectady?

13. What excitement sprang up in 1741? Describe this.

14. From what cause in particular did the colonists suffer? What good result followed?

1. What is said of the territory of New Jersey? Of its early settlement?



George Carteret. The latter named the territory New Jersey, after the island of Jersey, in the English Channel, of which he had been governor.

**3. Carteret and the early Settlers.**—Philip Carteret came over as governor in 1665, and resided at Elizabethtown. Settlers flocked in large numbers to the mild climate of the new province, where no rents were charged for the lands for the first five



MIDDLE COLONIES.

years. These easy terms led to serious disturbances, for when rent did become due, the settlers refused to pay any, and the governor was forced to leave the colony for a time.

**4. East and West Jersey.**—Lord Berkeley sold out his rights to two English Quakers in the year 1674. A few years after the entire tract was divided into two parts—East and West Jersey. Carteret took the east, and the other proprietors the west part.

**5. Andros in New Jersey.**—When Andros was governor of New York, under the duke, in 1678, he claimed the governorship of New Jersey. In 1680 he went to Elizabethtown, and carried off Governor Carteret a prisoner to New York. Next year the duke gave up all claim to Jersey, and the proprietors were restored to their rights.

2. Who owned the territory first under English rule? To whom was it sold? Why named New Jersey?

3. What is said of the early settlers? What troubles ensued?

4. What is said of Berkeley's right? How was the territory divided?

5. What is said of Major Andros, and the claim? How did he enforce this claim? What was the end of the business?

6. **Carteret no longer Proprietor.**—In 1682 Carteret sold his rights in East Jersey to William Penn and eleven other Quakers. They had very troublesome times with their tenants, many of whom were Scotch settlers, and were glad to give up their right of government to the crown in the year 1702.

7. **New Jersey a royal Province.**—The same year all New Jersey was united with New York under one governor, and the union continued for 36 years. At the end of that period New Jersey obtained a royal governor for itself. No further change took place until the Revolution.

#### DELAWARE—PENNSYLVANIA.

1. **The Swedes on the Delaware.**—Delaware was first settled by the Swedes, near the present city of WILMINGTON, in 1638. To the territory around their fort they gave the name of New Sweden. In 1643 they built a fort on Tinicum Island, a few miles below the present city of Philadelphia. Stuyvesant, as we have seen, conquered the colony of New Sweden. The Swedish settlers, however, still remained on the Delaware.

2. **Penn's Grant.**—William Penn, in the year 1681, obtained from King Charles II. a grant of land west of the Delaware, in payment of a debt due his father. The grant covered what is now the State of Pennsylvania. In 1682 the Duke of York, with whom Penn was a great favorite, gave him in addition all that territory now known as the State of Delaware. This was presently named "the territories or three lower counties on the Delaware."

3. **First Settlers—Penn's Arrival.**—On these two tracts Penn was desirous of providing a home for oppressed Quakers, or "Friends," as they called themselves. The

---

6. What became of Carteret's right? How did the new proprietors succeed?

7. What happened in 1702? State what is said of its further history.

1. Where and by whom was Delaware first settled? What was its first name? What other settlement was made by them? What can you state of the conquest of New Sweden? See page 44. How long did it exist as a colony?

2. Whence was the origin of Pennsylvania? What other tract did Penn receive? By what name was it known?

first settlers came out and settled at New Castle, on the Delaware, in 1681. Penn himself came over late in 1682. Early in 1683 he laid out the city of PHILADELPHIA, or "brotherly love."

4. **His Treatment of the Indians.**—There is something very pleasing in the way Penn treated the Indians. He bought their lands, and, under the great elm-tree of Kensington, made a treaty of peace with them, which lasted seventy years. In all his dealings with them he was so kind and truthful that the natives always trusted one who wore the dress of a Quaker.

5. **Penn and the Colonists.**—This great and good man was not equally fortunate in retaining the good-will of all the colonists. He made the terms of settlement very easy, and gave them great liberty in the management of their affairs; but the "territories" on the Delaware caused him much anxiety. They wanted a government of their own, distinct from that of Pennsylvania.

6. **Delaware a separate Province.**—At last, in 1691, while he was on a visit to England, Penn sent word that the territories might have their own way; and he appointed a deputy-governor over them. In 1703 a final agreement of separation was made. Each colony had its own Assembly, but both remained under one governor.

7. **Happiness of the Colonists.**—The history of these two colonies is marked by no event of striking importance. This is the best evidence of their growth and happiness. Beyond the disputes with Penn on the lower Delaware, there was nothing to mar their comfort. Swedes and Quakers were treated alike, with the same noble generosity that marked the conduct of Penn.

8. **The Government of both Colonies.**—After his death,

---

3. What use did Penn intend to make of these grants? What is said of the first settlements?

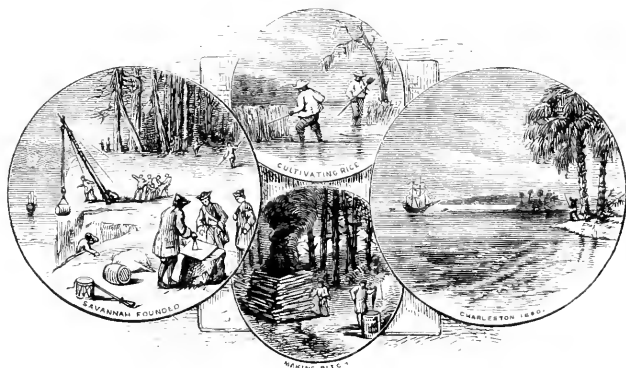
4. What is said of Penn's treatment of the Indians? How did they treat his settlers in return?

5. What is said of Penn and the Delaware settlers? What did they want?

6. What arrangement was made in 1691? What one in 1703?

7. What is said of the happiness of the colonists?

in 1718, the colonies were governed by his descendants or their deputies. In the year 1779 the State of Pennsylvania, grateful to the memory of Penn, paid to his heirs nearly \$600,000 for their proprietary rights.



## PART IV.—EXTREME SOUTHERN COLONIES.

### NORTH CAROLINA.

1. **Early Settlements.**—The first attempts at settlement within the present limits of North Carolina were made by Raleigh, at Roanoke Island. About seventy years later, in 1651, a few emigrants from Virginia settled near the mouth of the Chowan River. Ten years after, some New Englanders settled on Cape Fear River, near the present city of Wilmington. Neither of these two colonies prospered.

2. **The Clarendon Grant.**—In the year 1663 Charles II. granted a large tract of land, south of Virginia, to Lord Clarendon and seven noblemen. They named this province Carolina, in honor of the king.

8. How were the colonies governed? How did Pennsylvania show its regard for the memory of Penn?

1. When and where were the first settlements attempted in North Carolina? What two settlements were made later?

2. What was the Clarendon grant? What was it named, and why?

3. **Albemarle and Clarendon Colonies.**—In 1664, some emigrants from Virginia landed near the old spot on the Chowan River, and formed a settlement which they named **ALBEMARLE COLONY**, in honor of one of the proprietors. This was found to be north of the Clarendon grants, and new boundaries were therefore granted. The present southern boundary of Virginia became the line on the north; the line on the south took in more than one half of Florida. In 1665 emigrants from Barbadoes settled near **WILMINGTON**. This was named the **CLARENDON COLONY**, but it did not succeed.

4. **Locke's Plan of Government.**—The celebrated philosopher, John Locke, had been asked by the proprietors to draw up a frame of government for Carolina. In doing this he provided for an order of nobility, who were to govern and make laws for the people. Perhaps this might have suited a thickly settled country, but in the wilderness of Carolina it proved worse than useless, after a trial of twenty years.

5. **Progress of Carolina.**—The Albemarle Colony was the only one that flourished in numbers. Locke's scheme of government, and quarrels with the proprietors about lands and rents, produced constant contentions. About the beginning of the 18th century numbers of French and German Protestants settled in North Carolina. There came also considerable bodies of Scotch and North Irish emigrants. The colony was at last fixed on a firm footing, and, but for the oppression of the governors, the people would have been happy.

6. **Carolina divided.**—The government of the proprietors came to an end in 1729. That year the King of England, George II., bought the rights of the proprietors, and divided the province into North and South Carolina.

---

3. Where was the first settlement under this grant? What mistake was made? How was this remedied? What occurred in 1665? What was its success?

4. What duty was assigned to a distinguished Englishman? What is said of it?

5. How did the Carolina Colony succeed at first? What is said of the later settlers?

From this time onward to the Revolution each of these was a separate royal province.

#### SOUTH CAROLINA.

1. **Charleston settled.**—Under the Clarendon grant some colonists settled on the west bank of the Ashley River, in 1670. Here they founded OLD CHARLESTON. The settlement was named Carteret Colony. It was very soon seen that the land at the junction of the Ashley and Cooper rivers was more desirable. Thither the settlers on the west bank of the Ashley moved, in the year 1680, and laid the foundation of the present city of CHARLESTON.

2. **Early Settlers—the Huguenots.**—Many of the early settlers of South Carolina were Huguenots, driven from France by religious persecution. Their patient, industrious, and strictly moral lives had a marked influence on the success of the colony.

3. **Trouble with the Spaniards and Indians.**—The colony had serious trouble, at different times, with the Spaniards of Florida. A combined Spanish and French fleet, in 1706, attempted to capture Charleston, but was repulsed, with heavy loss. The settlers suffered also severely from the Indians on their borders as late as the year 1715.

4. **Effect of the Indian Wars.**—It was the expense incurred by the Indian wars that led to the change of government in 1729, already mentioned in the history of North Carolina. The colonists were heavily taxed, and the proprietors paid nothing. The people rebelled; the king interfered; Carolina was divided; and South Carolina became a royal province.

---

6. What important event occurred in 1729? What was the government of North Carolina after this?

1. What and where were the first settlements made in South Carolina? What led to the settlement of New Charleston?

2. What is said of the early settlers?

3. From what source did the colony have trouble? Did they have trouble from any other?

4. What led to the change in 1729? State what is said.

## GEORGIA.

1. **Founding of Georgia.**—The Colony of Georgia was formed out of the original Clarendon grant. In 1732 James Oglethorpe obtained a grant from King George II. of all the land between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers. In honor of the king, he named this Georgia.

2. **Oglethorpe the Founder.**—Oglethorpe was a soldier of some distinction, and a member of Parliament. He was a man of a very benevolent nature, and his object in founding Georgia was to provide a home for the suffering poor of England. The colony was placed in the hands of 21 trustees, for 21 years, who were to carry out this plan.

3. **Character of the early Settlers.**—Oglethorpe himself led the first emigrants to the Savannah River, in the year 1733, and founded SAVANNAH. The colony increased in numbers. But these poor people did not make it a successful colony. A large number of sturdy Scotch Highlanders and industrious Germans arrived; and they gave whatever vigor and life Georgia had for a long time.

4. **Oglethorpe's Energy.**—The bravery and activity of Oglethorpe saved the colony from destruction by the Spaniards, in 1742. Florida bordered on Georgia, and the danger from this cause was by no means small; but the Spaniards were frightened by Oglethorpe's preparations, and retired.

5. **Treatment of Oglethorpe.**—The colonists showed great ingratitude for all Oglethorpe's kindness. They went so far as to send an agent to England with complaints against him. These, after careful trial, were pronounced to be utterly without foundation.

6. **Success of the Colony.**—The colony, meanwhile, did

---

1. Out of what was Georgia formed? Who obtained the grant, and when? What was its extent, and why named Georgia?

2. Who was Oglethorpe? What was his object? How was the trust arranged?

3. Where was the first settlement made? How did the colony succeed at first? What is said of later settlers?

4. What is said of Oglethorpe's care of the colony?

5. How did the colonists repay his kindness?

not flourish. The trustees were wearied with the complaints of the colonists, and at length, in the year 1752, they resigned their powers into the hands of the king. Georgia then became a royal province.

---

### GENERAL REFLECTIONS ON COLONIAL HISTORY.

1. **Period of Settlement.**—The number of English colonies was thirteen. **MAINE**, which was a separate colony and province until 1692, was in that year annexed to Massachusetts. The settlement of the colonies extended through a period of 126 years. Virginia, the first, was settled in 1607. Georgia, the last, was settled in 1733. The most active period of settlement was from 1607 to 1637. During this time Virginia, Maryland, New York, and the New England colonies, were founded. Georgia was the only colony begun after the commencement of the 18th century. The period of settlement may therefore be said to be the 17th century.

2. **Different Nationalities.**—In the year 1750 the great body of the inhabitants in the colonies were either **ENGLISH** or their descendants. But many of the settlers came from other nations of Europe. The **DUTCH** were numerous in New York; the **FRENCH** were found in New York and South Carolina; the **SCOTCH** and **IRISH**, in East Jersey, the Carolinas, and Georgia; the **SWEDES**, on the Delaware; the **GERMANS**, in Pennsylvania and North Carolina.

3. **Their Industries.**—In New England the inhabitants were occupied in farming, lumbering, manufacturing, ship-building, and the fisheries. In the Middle States they were chiefly farmers. In Virginia and Maryland the principal staple was tobacco, and farming was the main business. In Carolina and Georgia were the rice planta-

---

6. What is said of the final success of the colony?

1. How long was the period of settlement? What was the most active period?

2. From what nation were the great mass of the settlers? What other nations were represented? Where were they found in the colonies?



tions, near the coast: on the high lands the settlers were farmers. Cotton was not yet cultivated to any extent.

**4. Trade and Commerce.**—The most commercial colony was Massachusetts. Boston, from the first, was the most active of all the towns in shipping. Philadelphia and New York were both considerable ports. Virginia had no shipping-ports worthy of note. If we examine a map of Virginia, we may notice how many large rivers run into Chesapeake Bay. Up these the ships went to the plantations, and took away the produce of the planters, leaving other things in exchange. This is the reason why the colonists of Virginia did not collect in large towns. Jamestown was never more than a village.

**5. Currency.**—The trade of the colonies was, in early times, mainly carried on by exchange or barter. In Virginia, for a long time, tobacco was used as money; in New England, wampum, made of shells; in New York, beaver-skins. The currency was English—pounds, shillings, and pence. Dollars and cents came in with the Revolution.

**6. Colonial Habits.**—The mode of life was exceedingly simple. They had abundance of plain food, but there were few luxuries. They wore homespun clothes, and made their yarn from the wool of their own sheep. The roads were poor, and wheel vehicles were very few. The farmer's wife rode to church or market behind her husband, on one horse. The young people managed to enjoy themselves very merrily. They had corn-huskings, apple-parings, election parades, thanksgiving feasts, and out-of-door sports. It was a simple life, with plenty of hard labor, but it was a very free one. There was no waste, and there was little or no want.

3. In what were the settlers of New England engaged? Of the Middle States? Of Virginia and Maryland? Of Carolina and Georgia?

4. What was the most commercial colony? The most commercial town? What two others are mentioned? Why had Virginia no large towns?

5. How was trade carried on? What was used instead of currency? In what money were accounts kept? When was the Federal currency adopted?

6. What is said of the mode of life? Clothing? Roads and modes of conveyance? Amusements of the young? What remark is made?

7. **Class Distinctions.**—In Virginia, and to a certain extent in the Middle States, the large land-holders formed an aristocracy. By this it is meant that a few leading families kept the chief offices in their own hands. For example, there were the **PLANTERS**, on great estates, in Virginia; the **PATROONS**, or large land-owners, in New York; and the **PROPRIETORS** in New Jersey. In New England the land was divided into small farms, and there was thus less contrast in wealth between the settlers. This made the people of these Eastern colonies more democratic from the first.

8. **Religious Denominations.**—There was very great variety of religious belief in the colonies. The Church of England was supreme in Virginia and the Carolinas. The Catholics settled in Maryland; the Puritans, in New England; the Quakers, in Pennsylvania, Delaware, and West Jersey; the Presbyterians, in East Jersey; the Reformers from Holland, in New York; and the French Huguenots, in New York and South Carolina.

9. **Religious Freedom.**—Puritans, Catholics, Quakers, Huguenots, fled from persecution in order to enjoy their own faith unmolested in America. But some of these sects were very intolerant to those who differed from them. Thus, we saw Williams and the Quakers driven from Massachusetts; and in Maryland the Catholics were, before many years, disfranchised by the Presbyterians. In looking at this we must not be too ready to blame these sects; for we must remember that the principles of religious freedom were not then well understood in any part of the world.

10. **Education.**—The New England colonies were the most active and careful to provide for the education of the

---

7. What distinction was there in Virginia? What is an aristocracy? Give examples. What is said of New England in this particular?

8. What is said of religion in the colonies? Name the denominations spoken of. Where was each of these to be found?

9. From what cause were many colonies settled? What is said of religious freedom among them? Why do they not deserve great blame for this?

young. Under the Dutch rule, New Amsterdam had its school-master almost as soon as its minister. The Quakers of Pennsylvania and New Jersey established schools at an early day. Virginia and Maryland at first moved very slowly in this work; but toward the close of the 17th century schools began to multiply.

**11. Printing—Newspapers.**—The first printing-press in the colonies was set up in Cambridge, Massachusetts, in the year 1639. The first newspaper was established at Boston, in 1690, but stopped after the first number. In 1700 there was not one in the thirteen colonies: in 1774 there were not less than 37. In Virginia it was the boast of the governor that there was neither printing-press nor school in the year 1675.

**12. Different Kinds of Government.**—Three forms of government prevailed in the colonies: the PROPRIETARY, the CHARTER, and the ROYAL, or PROVINCIAL.

**13. Proprietary Governments.**—Nearly all the colonies were, at one time or other, under PROPRIETORS, who had certain rights of government granted by the crown. Pennsylvania is an example of proprietary government, undisturbed from its settlement until the Revolution. Maryland and Delaware are also examples.

**14. Charter Governments** were carried on under certain rights granted to the people in WRITING by the crown. Hence the name charter, from the word *charta*, a sheet. The principal charter governments were Connecticut, Rhode Island, Massachusetts. We may remember what was said about the Connecticut and Rhode Island charters. Under this form of government the people had the right of choosing their own governors.

10. When was public education first cared for? What is said of other colonies?

11. What is said of the first printing-press? Of newspapers? What is said of Virginia in 1675?

12. How many and what kinds of government prevailed in the colonies?

13. What was proprietary government? What examples are given of this?

14. What was charter government? Give examples of this form. What right did the people have under this?

**15. Royal Governments.**—Nearly all the colonies, by the year 1750, had passed under the crown. They had thus become ROYAL PROVINCES, in which the governor and his deputies were chosen by the King of England. The only exceptions were Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Delaware, which remained under proprietors; and Connecticut and Rhode Island, which kept their free charter governments.

**16. Love of Liberty.**—The nature of these governments did not seem to make any difference in the love of liberty among the people of the colonies. Virginia was made a royal province in 1624, six years before Boston was settled, and yet she had in 1775 as active and liberty-loving a population as Connecticut, which had the freest charter in America. So it was with New York, which, either as a Dutch or English province, had no charter.

**17. How the Love of Freedom was nourished.**—The truth is, that the great new country was thinly settled, and the lands were cheap. The frugal and independent habits of the people nourished the spirit of liberty. When the royal governors troubled and oppressed them, they resisted, and would vote no money. The rulers might go a certain length, but they did not dare to go too far. The early settlers, for the most part, came to America to enjoy freedom, and their descendants inherited the LOVE OF LIBERTY and HATRED OF OPPRESSION.

---

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How many English colonies were there? Name them.
  2. Which was the first settled? The last? Give dates.
  3. What was the chief period of settlement?
  4. How many were first settled by the English?
  5. How many were begun by people of other nations?
  6. What nations' colonies bounded the English on the north and south?
  7. Which of the thirteen colonies were settled by persecuted religious sects?
  8. Give the particulars of the settlement of the first colony.
  9. What difficulties did it encounter at first?
  10. Who formed the London Company? Give account.
- 
15. What is said of royal government? To what extent did it prevail?
  16. How did these different forms affect the settlers? What examples are given to prove this?
  17. What causes produced this love of freedom?

11. Who was John Smith?
12. Show how his labors benefited the colony.
13. Show his ability by what occurred when he left.
14. What important events occurred during the period of the third charter?
15. Why were these important?
16. What misfortune befell the colony in 1622?
17. To what great change did this lead?
18. Give some account of the rule of the London Company.
19. What were the provisions of the Navigation Act?
20. What was the object of the English in passing this?
21. From what cause did Bacon's rebellion arise?
22. Why did Virginia have no large towns?
23. Under what grant was Maryland settled?
24. What was there remarkable about its charter?
25. What difficulties did the colony encounter at first?
26. Who was Clayborne? Sketch his connection with Maryland.
27. What kind of government had Maryland?
28. When did the connection of the Baltimore family end?
29. When and by whom was New England named?
30. How many New England colonies were there? Name them.
31. Was Maine one? Why not? Was Vermont one?
32. What was the origin and extent of the Great Patent?
33. Give an account of the settlement of New Plymouth.
34. What was the history of the Pilgrims in Europe?
35. What was the origin of the great colony of New England?
36. Who were the Puritans?
37. Where were the first settlements made in Massachusetts Bay?
38. How did the Puritans treat those who differed from them?
39. Give examples of this.
40. To the establishment of what colony did this lead?
41. What other colony sprang from Massachusetts?
42. What were some of the principal events in the history of Massachusetts?
43. Give an account of King Philip's War.
44. Give the name, cause, and duration, of each of the first three intercolonia wars.
45. Name the principal event in each.
46. To whom did Acadia originally belong? What did the English name it?
47. What was the extent of the Connecticut grant?
48. What nation claimed the territory, and what steps did they take to maintain their claim?
49. How and when was this claim settled? See New York.
50. How many and what colonies were there originally in Connecticut?
51. When and how did they become one colony?
52. What was peculiar about the Connecticut charter?
53. Give the account of the settlement of Rhode Island.
54. Give the history of its charter. Why was it obtained?
55. What colony did it resemble in one of the provisions?
56. What events marked the first settlement of New Hampshire?
57. Who was the proprietor, and what difficulties did he meet with?
58. With what colony was New Hampshire intimately connected?
59. Name the Middle colonies. Give their extent.
60. How much of this was claimed by another European nation?
61. Under what name and claim did they hold it?
62. Give a short account of the first settlement of this territory.
63. Name some of the most important events of New Netherland history.

64. Sketch the character of Peter Stuyvesant.
65. What change took place under his administration?
66. How did this change affect the future history of New Jersey and Delaware?
67. How long did the Duke of York hold New York?
68. Who was King William? What is said of him elsewhere in the history?
69. What sad affair occurred in New York after the accession of King William?
70. What sort of rulers were the royal governors?
71. Who were the Patroons?
72. How long was New York under proprietors? A royal Province?
73. When and where was New Jersey first settled by the English?
74. What changes took place in the proprietorship of New Jersey?
75. Who were the principal settlers of New Jersey?
76. From what cause did troubles arise?
77. How long was it a royal province? and under proprietors?
78. What led to the settlement of Pennsylvania?
79. How was Penn's grant increased?
80. Who were the first settlers on the Delaware?
81. Give the history of this colony.
82. Why is the history of those two middle colonies so closely connected?
83. What difficulties ensued between the English settlers on the Delaware and Penn?
84. How were these finally settled?
85. Sketch the character of William Penn.
86. Who were the Quakers? In what colonies are they mentioned?
87. What was the government of Delaware and Pennsylvania?
88. How long did it last?
89. With what colonies was Penn closely connected?
90. What southern colony was first settled from Virginia?
91. What was its early success?
92. How far did the first Carolina grant extend?
93. Name the different colonies within the present limits of North Carolina.
94. Name those within the limits of South Carolina.
95. Give the history of Locke's Constitution.
96. What was the character of the settlers in these two colonies?
97. What useful foreigners settled near Charleston?
98. How long were the Carolinas under proprietors?
99. For what object was Georgia founded?
100. Who was Oglethorpe? Sketch his character.
101. How did the colony succeed?
102. How was Georgia governed at first?
103. What was its final success as a colony?
104. What were the industries of the several colonies?
105. Which were the commercial colonies and towns?
106. State what is said of the early habits of the people.
107. How many kinds of government were to be found in the colonies?
108. Give examples of each.
109. How was trade carried on with the scarcity of money?
110. Which was the greatest trading colony?
111. Name the principal sea-ports of the colonies.
112. What strengthened among the people the love of freedom?
113. Give an example of this.



## CHAPTER III.

## FRENCH EXPLORATIONS AND SETTLEMENTS.

FROM THE YEAR 1609.

1. **A Knowledge of French Explorations necessary.**—We have now reached that period when the great and final struggle between the French and English colonies was about to begin. We can not clearly understand the causes that led to this contest without knowing something of the French explorations that had been going on from the year 1609.

2. **The French forced westward.**—It will be remembered that the Frenchman, Champlain, entered the northern part of New York in the year 1609. He did this to assist the Huron Indians against the Iroquois (*e-ro-quáh*). The consequence was that the latter became bitter enemies of the French, and completely prevented them from exploring southward. The French were thus compelled to push westward along the shores of the great lakes.

3. **The Jesuits and their Labors.**—The explorers were chiefly Jesuit missionaries—brave, self-devoted men, who

- 
1. Why is a knowledge of French explorations necessary at this point?
  2. Who entered northern New York in 1609? For what purpose? What was the consequence of this?

were ready to endure every privation, torture, and even death itself, to raise the banner of the Cross among the red men of the forest. These remarkable men moved steadily westward, and planted stations, or missions, giving them French names. Many of these remain to the present day. In 1668 they founded St. Mary's, the oldest settlement in the State of Michigan.

4. **Upper Mississippi discovered.**—One of the missionaries, the celebrated Father Marquette (*mar-két*), with a trader named Joliet (*zhoh-yā'*), floated down the Wisconsin River in a birch-bark canoe, and discovered the Mississippi, in June, 1673. On their way back to Green Bay, they stopped at the present site of Chicago.

5. **La Salle.**—The most remarkable of all these Frenchmen was La Salle (*sal*). He was the explorer of the lower Mississippi and the founder of Louisiana. His life was one constant scene of adventure. While he was yet a young man, he attracted the notice of the French king by his explorations of lakes Erie and Ontario. The king rewarded him by granting him Fort Frontenac and a large tract of land adjoining.

6. **Explores the Mississippi—Louisiana.**—His active spirit urged him to explore the great river that Marquette had seen, and in 1682 he descended the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico. The country on its banks he named Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV., king of France. Four years after this, La Salle sailed from France with an expedition, to plant a colony in Louisiana. He missed the mouth of the Mississippi, and landed his colonists somewhere on the Texas coast.

7. **La Salle's sad Fate.**—The supplies that were expect-

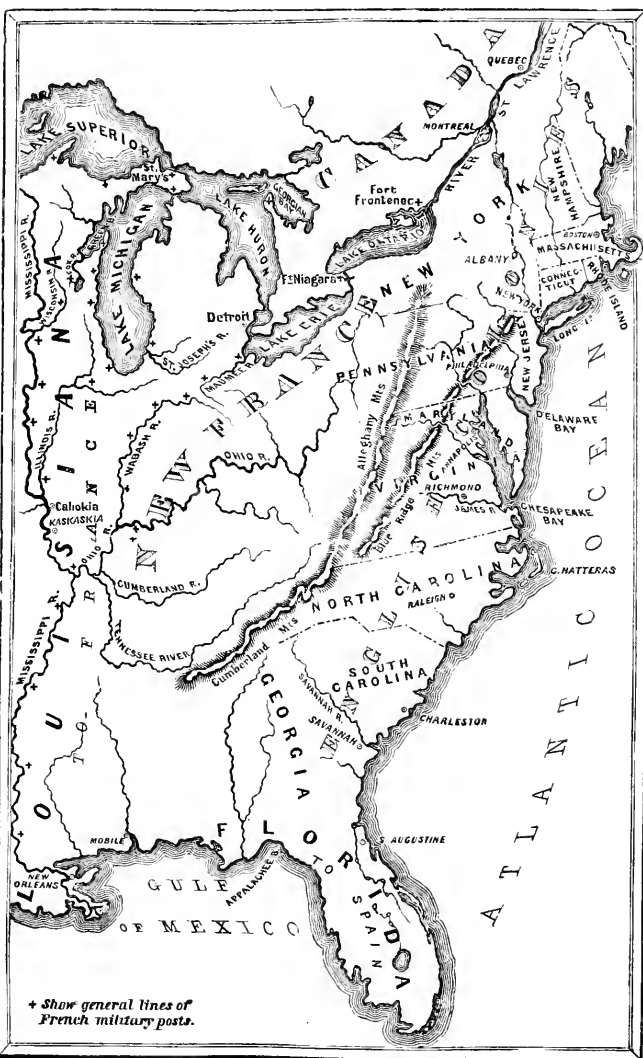
3. Who were the French explorers? What is said of their self-denial? What is said of their labors? What evidence do we still have of their movements?

4. What discovery was made by two Frenchmen? When? Where did they stop on their return?

5. Who was the most remarkable of the French explorers? What is said of his early history?

6. What did he explore, and when? What territory did he name, and why? What is said of his colony?





ed from France did not come. The settlers sickened, and many of them died; and La Salle started north, with sixteen men, to go to Canada, through the wilderness, for help. On the way, he was treacherously slain by two of his companions. Such was the fate of La Salle, the explorer and founder of the vast territory of Louisiana. Nothing was ever learned of the fate of the colony.

8. **Ill Success of French Colonies.**—Although the French were very active in their explorations, the settlements around the missions did not increase greatly. Louisiana also grew very slowly. What the French principally gained was a claim to the country by exploration and occupation.

9. **Remarkable Activity of the French.**—Before the year 1750 they had, in addition to their missions, sixty small military stations, stretching from Lake Ontario, down the Mississippi, to New Orleans. By 1748 they had traversed the country south of Lake Erie east to the mountains. At different places they buried leaden plates engraved with the arms of France, and in this way took formal possession of the territory.

10. **English Colonization—Conflict of Claims.**—Nearly all this time the English colonies confined themselves to the strip of land on the coast east of the Alleghanies. The moment the English frontiersmen crossed to the west side of the mountains, the two nations came in contact on **DISPUTED TERRITORY**. Then followed the French and Indian War.

---

7. Whither did La Salle start, and why? What happened? What became of the colony?

8. How did the French succeed in settling the country? What did the French chiefly gain?

9. What idea is given of the way the French occupied the territory? How did they mark their claim?

10. Where were the English meanwhile? What brought on the war?



## CHAPTER IV.

## THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

1. **Immediate Cause of the War.**—In the year 1749 a grant of 600,000 acres of land west of the Alleghanies, on and near the Ohio River, was made to a body of speculators called the Ohio Company. This sent traders into this tract, to traffic with the Indians. The grant embraced a part of that region claimed by the French.

2. **Promptness of the French.**—The latter drove the company's traders away, and in some cases made prisoners of them. This was in the year 1752. To maintain their hold of the territory, the French next year built a fort at Presque Isle (*pres-keel'*), now the present town of Erie, Pennsylvania. Farther south they built two forts—one, Fort Le Bœuf (*lâ-buff'*), at the present town of Waterford, Pennsylvania; the other, Fort Venango, on French Creek, which flows into the Alleghany River.

3. **George Washington sent to the Forts.**—These forts were within the territory claimed by Virginia. In 1753 Governor Dinwiddie resolved to send a letter to the

---

1. What grant was made in 1749? What use was made of this? Why was this the immediate cause of war?

2. What did the French at first do? What did they do to keep the British out?

French commander demanding their removal. To carry this message he chose George Washington, a native of Virginia, and then only twenty-one years of age. It was a very arduous undertaking in the winter. Four hundred miles of wilderness lay between Williamsburg, the capital of Virginia, and the forts.

4. **Washington's Journey.**—Washington found the French commander, St. Pierre (*pe-áre*), at Fort Le Bœuf, where the young Virginian delivered Dinwiddie's message. After remaining a few days, Washington started home with St. Pierre's answer to Dinwiddie, and, through all the perils of winter and of savages, arrived safe at Williamsburg, January, 1754. St. Pierre's letter contained a positive refusal to give up the forts.

### 1754.

5. **Building of Fort Du Quesne.**—On his journey, Washington had noticed the point of land formed by the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers as an admirable place for a fort. To this point, early in 1754, the Ohio Company sent men to build one. The French fell suddenly on the workmen, drove them away, and, completing the works, named them Fort Du Quesne (*kane*).

6. **First Skirmish of the War.**—Meanwhile 600 Virginia militia, under Colonel Frye, Washington being second in command, were on their way to the company's new fort. On learning the news, Washington, with a small party, went on to reconnoitre, and met some French troops at a place called Great Meadows. A skirmish ensued, and the French officer, with some of his men, was killed, May 28.

7. **Washington builds Fort Necessity.**—Colonel Frye died about this time, and Washington took the command.

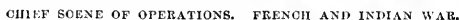
---

3. What did Virginia do? What is said of his messenger?

4. Where did Washington find the French commander? What is said of his journey home, and of St. Pierre's letter?

5. What point did Washington notice on his journey? What use was made of this? What happened there?

6. In what way was Virginia active? How did the first skirmish occur?



8. **Attacked by the French.**—Here Washington was attacked by 1500 French and Indians under De Villiers (*vil-yä'*), in July. After ten hours' hard fighting, the French captain offered Washington honorable terms on account of his brave defense. These were accepted, and the Virginia troops marched out with the honors of war.

8. What happened here? Describe the battle and the result.

9. **Colonial Congress at Albany.**—War had not yet been declared between England and France; nor was it until two years later. But the fighting had begun, and the colonies prepared for the contest. Delegates from seven of them, accordingly, met at Albany, in 1754, to agree on some plan of defense.

10. **Plan of Union agreed on.**—Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania, drew up a plan of UNION, which was adopted by the delegates, subject to the approval of the colonies and the English government. It was probably a very wise plan, for it pleased neither the king nor the colonies: each was afraid that it gave the other too much power.

### 1755.

11. **Arrival of General Braddock.**—The English government therefore determined to go forward itself, trusting to get help from the colonies. In February, 1755, General Braddock arrived in Virginia, with two regiments of British troops. At a meeting of colonial governors with Braddock, at Williamsburg, it was determined to send out three expeditions—one against Fort Du Quesne, another against Fort Niagara, a third against Crown Point.

12. **The Position of these Forts.**—The first, as we have seen, was in the disputed territory. The second was a strong post on the Niagara River, on the line of the French communications with the great lakes and the valley of the Mississippi. The third commanded the entrance to Canada. These were the great points of attack during the war.

13. **Braddock's Character and Movements.**—Braddock

---

9. Was war declared? When was it? What meeting was held?

10. Who was Benjamin Franklin? What did he do at the meeting? What is said of this plan?

11. What did England determine to do? Who arrived in 1755? What plan of a campaign was resolved on?

12. Give the position of Du Quesne. Of Niagara. Of Crown Point. What is said of these three?

in person, with a well-appointed army, went against Fort Du Quesne. He was a brave but headstrong officer, who would take no advice from Washington, his aid-de-camp, nor, in fact, from any one else. He despised Indian bush-fighting, and marched his men through the woods as though they were on parade.

**14. The Ambuscade.**—The advanced corps under Braddock arrived, July 9, within seven or eight miles of Fort Du Quesne. They were marching gayly along the banks of the Monongahela, their drums beating, and their muskets glistening in the sun, when suddenly the Indian war-whoop resounded through the forest. Braddock had fallen into an ambuscade. A few French, with a large force of Indians, had come out from the fort, and, hidden behind trees, now poured a steady fire on the British.

**15. Braddock's terrible Defeat.**—The men were terror-stricken; order was lost; they became huddled together like sheep, and their red coats formed a terrible mark for the unseen foe. Braddock and many of his officers, while trying to restore order, were either killed or mortally wounded. What remained of the British were only saved by the coolness of Washington and the despised Virginians, who knew how to fight the wily savages. The wreck of the army retreated to Fort Cumberland, and finally to Philadelphia.

**16. Expedition against Fort Niagara.**—Governor Shirley, who was sent against Fort Niagara, reached Oswego, on Lake Ontario, in the month of August. While there he received the news of Braddock's defeat. He then concluded to go no farther, and, leaving a garrison at Oswego, he returned to Albany.

**17. Expedition against Crown Point.**—General John-

13. Where did Braddock go? What is said of him?

14. What occurred on his march? What was the force of the enemy that met him? What is an ambuscade?

15. How did the English troops behave? What became of Braddock himself? How did the battle end? Where is Fort Cumberland? See Map, page 67.

16. Who moved against Fort Niagara? How far was he successful?

son, of New York, went against Crown Point. In August he was on the shore of Lake George, with a large body of provincial troops. The French, under Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*), pressed forward to attack him. On their way they met 1000 Massachusetts men, under Colonel Williams, defeated them, and pursued them to the camp. Fortunately the provincials had thrown up breastworks; and from behind these they poured a deadly fire on the French. Dieskau was severely wounded, and made prisoner. His troops fell back to Crown Point.

18. **Result of the Expedition.**—No forward movement was made by Johnson after the battle. He contented himself with building a fort near the camp, and named it Fort William Henry. Into this he put a garrison. The rest of his army returned to Albany, and was there disbanded. Johnson had accomplished very little, but was greatly praised and rewarded—mainly, perhaps, because he had not suffered a terrible defeat like Braddock.

19. **Acadia seized.**—In addition to these three expeditions, Massachusetts sent out a large force, in the month of May, to attack two French forts, Gaspereau (*gas-pā-ro'*) and Beausejour (*bo-sā-zhoor'*), at the head of the Bay of Fundy. They were easily taken, and Acadia fell into the hands of the colonial troops. The simple French inhabitants, who had taken no part in the war, were driven from the country with great cruelty.

## 1756.

20. **The Plan of the Campaign** for 1756 was precisely the same as that of the previous year. The three points of attack were forts Du Quesne, Niagara, and Crown Point. Every one of the expeditions failed.

---

17. What is said of Johnson's movements? Who was opposed to him? What sharp skirmish occurred? What battle followed?

18. What was done by Johnson after the battle? What notice was taken of him? Why was he so rewarded?

19. Give an account of a colonial expedition. What befell the Acadians?

20. What was the plan of operations for 1756?



**21. The French capture Oswego.**—While the troops intended to act against Crown Point were idling at Albany, the Marquis de Montcalm, the successor of Dieskau, crossed Lake Ontario, with some Canadians and Indians, and captured the forts at Oswego. Fifteen hundred prisoners and 135 cannon, together with a great quantity of military stores, and a fleet of vessels collected there for the attack on Fort Niagara, fell into the hands of Montcalm. After destroying the forts, he returned to Canada.

**22. Affairs on the Frontiers.**—Meanwhile, all through the western part of Virginia and Pennsylvania, the Indians were scalping and burning. So long as the French flag flew over Fort Du Quesne, that post was the centre and support of these depredations.

### 1757.

**23. English Movements.**—This year the plan of attack was entirely changed. The only expedition prepared was sent against the important fortress of Louisburg. A fleet carrying a heavy land force, under Lord Loudoun, started from New York. Meanwhile a French fleet, with re-enforcements for the garrison, entered the harbor of Louisburg; and Loudoun, on learning the news, sailed back to New York without making any attempt on the place.

**24. Montcalm at Fort William Henry.**—Montcalm, with his usual activity, moved up Lake George and laid siege to Fort William Henry, in the month of July. There was a garrison here of 2000 troops, under Colonel Monroe. After holding out bravely for six days, Monroe capitulated, with the honors of war. Fort William Henry was destroyed, and Montcalm returned to Crown Point.

---

21. Who was Montcalm? What movement did he make? With what success?  
 22. What was the state of things on the frontiers? Why was Fort Du Quesne so useful to the French?

23. How did the plan of the campaign for 1757 differ from that of 1756? What is said of the expedition?

24. What is said of Montcalm's movements? Describe the attack, and give the result.

## 1758.

**25. The Result of the War — Plan for the Year.**—The war had now gone on for three years. The English had thus far gained nothing of importance. They had men and money in abundance, but their affairs were badly managed. The Government of England this year made very great exertions, and sent out 22,000 regulars: the colonies raised 28,000 men. Over all Lord Abercrombie was appointed commander-in-chief. The plan of military operations was against the three places—Louisburg, Ticonderoga, and Du Quesne.

**26. Movement against Louisburg.**—Louisburg was captured, after a vigorous bombardment, by a powerful English fleet and land force—the latter under the command of General Amherst. The French made a brilliant defense with the means at their disposal, but were compelled to surrender, July 27. Cape Breton and St. John's islands also fell into the hands of the English.

**27. Ticonderoga not taken.**—General Abercrombie led a well-appointed army against Ticonderoga. Young Lord Howe, the favorite of the army, was killed while leading the advance. Abercrombie pushed on his main body to the assault without waiting for his artillery, and it ended in a bloody repulse, July 8.

**28. Bradstreet takes Fort Frontenac.**—One success shed a little glory on the expedition. Colonel Bradstreet, at his own earnest request, was dispatched with 3000 men against Fort Frontenac, on Lake Ontario. The place was easily taken. Nine vessels, with a large quantity of provisions, fell into his hands. This proved of great importance, because it led to the fall of Fort Du Quesne.

---

25. What is said of the progress of the war? What great efforts were made? What was the plan of the campaign?

26. What is said of the movement against Louisburg? Where was Louisburg situated? What also fell into the hands of the English?

27. Give an account of the movement against Fort Ticonderoga.

28. What important movement was made by part of Howe's army? With what success? Why is this so important?

**29. Expedition against Fort Du Quesne.**—The expedition against Fort Du Quesne was commanded by General Forbes, and Washington led the Virginia troops. It was a badly-managed expedition. Forbes, a man very much like Braddock, found himself fifty miles from the fort as winter was approaching. He and his troops were much discouraged, and were about to return home in November.

**30. The French abandon the Fort.**—Fortunately they learned from some deserters that the French at the fort were greatly dispirited by the loss of their Indian allies. These had left them on the news of the loss of Fort Frontenac, with the provisions. Washington pushed on in advance, and Fort Du Quesne was abandoned by the French. The Virginia troops entered, and the name was changed by the English to Fort Pitt—a name which is still retained in that of the thriving city which has risen there.

### 1759.

**31. Plan of the Campaign.**—There were this year three points of attack—Crown Point, Niagara, and Quebec. The expedition against Crown Point was under General Amherst; that against Niagara was led by General Prideaux (*pre-do'*). Both of these commanders, after finishing what they were ordered to do, were instructed to join General Wolfe in front of Quebec.

**32. Fort Niagara taken.**—General Prideaux was killed shortly after the siege of Niagara began, and the place was taken by his successor, Sir William Johnson, in July. For want of provisions and boats, he could not proceed to the St. Lawrence, as had been planned.

**33. Movements against Ticonderoga.**—Ticonderoga and Crown Point were abandoned on the approach of Am-

29. Who commanded against Fort Du Quesne? What is said of Forbes and his movements?

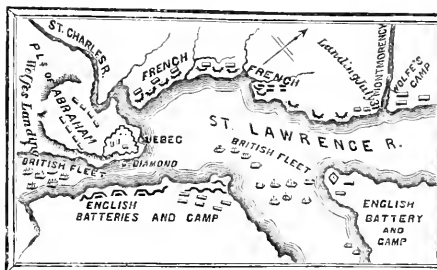
30. What fortunately saved the expedition? What was the final result?

31. What was the plan for 1759? Who were to command these expeditions? How were they all to combine?

32. Describe the movement against Niagara. What followed?

berst. There were, however, no boats ready to carry his men to the assistance of General Wolfe. There was no help for that general, either from the Niagara expedition or Amherst.

34. **Quebec—its Position.**—On the 26th of June, General Wolfe arrived opposite Quebec with 8000 men and a large fleet. He first tried to batter the works from Point Levi, across the river, but his guns could do no harm to the upper town. Above Quebec the river bank was defended by precipitous cliffs. Below were the Charles and Montmorenci rivers, and an intrenched camp, defended by the ever-watchful Montcalm.



OPERATIONS AROUND QUEBEC, 1759.

MONUMENT TO WOLFE AND MONTCALM.

35. **Wolfe climbs the Heights of Abraham.**—Wolfe tried to storm this camp, but was repulsed with severe loss. No help came from Niagara or Amherst; and at last it was proposed, in a council of war, to scale the precipice above the city. At night his troops climbed, by a narrow pathway, up the cliff, and at six in the morning of September 13 were drawn up on the Plains of Abraham.

36. **Battle of Quebec—its Results.**—Montcalm was surprised, but at once saw he must fight to save the city,

33. What success did Amherst meet with? What prevented him from going to the St. Lawrence?

34. Where was Wolfe in June? What did he try to do? How was Quebec defended?

35. Describe Wolfe's different movements.

and promptly attacked him. The battle was short, bloody, and decisive. Wolfe died in the moment of victory, when the French had begun to flee. Montcalm, mortally wounded, was carried into Quebec. The city was the reward of the victorious English; it surrendered four days after, and the British flag supplanted the French banner on the heights of Quebec, September 17.

**37. French Attempt to retake Quebec.**—Early in the following year, 1760, the French came down in force from Montreal. A severe battle was fought, and the British were driven within the walls of Quebec. Before the French could take advantage of their success a British fleet arrived, and they retreated to Montreal. Soon after they surrendered Montreal and all the posts in Canada.

**38. Treaty of Peace.**—In 1763 a treaty of peace was made. By this France relinquished all her possessions east of the Mississippi, with the exception of the Island of Orleans, to the British forever. From Spain, which had joined the French in the war, Great Britain obtained Florida. England was now mistress of the North American Continent east of the Mississippi.

**39. Pontiac's War.**—The Indian tribes friendly to the French were not willing to submit to the English rule. In 1763 they formed a league under Pontiac, a famous Ottawa chief. All the British posts west of Niagara, excepting Detroit and Fort Pitt, were either captured or destroyed, and their garrisons made prisoners or massacred. Many settlers were killed, and the rest fled eastward for protection. In 1764 the Indians, overawed by the preparations made to put them down, sued for peace.

---

36. What did his last movement force Montcalm to do? Give an account of the battle. What important event followed in a few days?

37. Was there any more fighting? When and where, and with what result? What interfered with French movements? What important surrender followed this?

38. When was the treaty of peace made? What were its provisions? What was the first great result of the French and Indian War?

39. What other war soon broke out? What was the cause of this? What is said of its ravages? How did it end?

## RESULTS OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

40. **The Colonists learn their Ability.**—England had driven France from the Continent of America. The colonists were very proud of the triumph; for they had fought in the same expeditions with the British troops, and had found that they were quite as active and hardy as the regulars. The English officers sneered at the awkward manners of the young farmers. But the work the latter were set to do was generally well done.

41. **The Lesson of Union—Trained Officers.**—The colonists, in this way, learned to know their own strength and what they could accomplish by union. Besides, the war gave them trained officers for the great struggle that was fast approaching. Washington, Putnam, Gates, Montgomery, Stark, Arnold, Morgan, and a great many others, less known, were trained in this war.

42. **What the War cost the Colonists.**—All this was not gained without heavy cost. They had lost 30,000 young men by the war. Their frontiers had been ravaged far and wide by the Indians. The colonies had expended \$16,000,000. They were repaid only \$5,000,000 of this by the English Government.

43. **The Effect of the War on England.**—The war spread all over the world. Wherever the French and English met, on land or sea, there was fighting. All this was done at heavy cost, and the consequence was a large increase of the English national debt. We shall presently see that the great triumph of England in America hastened the loss of her American colonies, and in less than twenty years proved England's great misfortune.

---

40. How did the colonists look upon the result of the war? What did it teach them as to their own value as soldiers?

41. What other lesson did it teach them? What did the war give them, of great value for the future? Name some of these.

42. What did the war cost the colonies in men? In money?

43. What was its effect on England? Why was this so heavy? What did the war lead to directly?

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How many and what intercolonial wars were there before the French and Indian war?
2. How did these differ in origin from the last mentioned?
3. In what direction did the French carry their explorations after the year 1609?
4. When was the Mississippi a second time discovered?
5. Who discovered it the first time, and when?
6. Name the distinguished French explorers after 1609.
7. Give the exploration and early history of Louisiana.
8. Sketch the career and character of La Salle.
9. Describe the extent of the French claim on the Continent.
10. How did they maintain possession of the territory?
11. Where were the English colonies during all this time?
12. Where, when, and how did the French come into collision with the English?
13. Give the principal movements of the French in the year 1753.
14. Describe Washington's journey, giving its cause and results.
15. When, and where, was the first blood shed?
16. State the principal events of 1754.
17. What occurred at Fort Necessity? What led to this?
18. When was war declared between France and England?
19. What does this show?
20. What great American was active at Albany in 1754?
21. What was the object of this Convention, and its success?
22. Who was Braddock?
23. What was the plan of operations for 1755?
24. Why were these places important?
25. Describe Braddock's expedition and defeat.
26. What was the result of the year's operations?
27. What was the plan for 1756?
28. How much was accomplished?
29. Give the plan of operations for 1757.
30. What were the principal events of the year?
31. Who were the French and English generals mentioned these two previous years?
32. On which side were the advantages previous to 1758?
33. State the reason of this.
34. Give the plan of operations for 1758.
35. How much of this succeeded?
36. What event contributed to the fall of Fort Du Quesne next year?
37. State the plan of the war for 1759.
38. How far was this carried out?
39. Describe the movements against Quebec, and the battle on the heights.
40. To what did this lead?
41. What attempt did the French make to recapture Quebec?
42. Where, and when, was a treaty of peace proclaimed?
43. Give its terms.
44. What advantages did the colonies reap from the war?
45. What illustrious man was brought prominently into notice by the war?
46. How was England affected by the contest?



## CHAPTER V.

### CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

1. **Remote Causes—Navigation Act.**—England, from the first, had treated the colonies with considerable severity. What she wanted was to make money out of them. She took their productions, sending them her own in return; and would only allow them to ship their staves, lumber, flour, fish, tobacco, or rice, to other parts of the world in British vessels.

2. **Their Manufactures stopped.**—England would not allow them to make any thing that would interfere with her own manufactures. The colonists, having plenty of beaver-skins, made a great many hats. The English stopped that: they said that America would soon supply all the world with hats. The colonists manufactured iron. The English stopped that: they said that the Americans “had no right to manufacture even a nail for a horse-shoe.”

3. **Oppression by Royal Governors.**—The English kings took away the rights of the colonies, and sent them royal

1. In what way had England treated the colonies? Give examples. Under what act was this done?

2. What was the treatment of the colonies in manufactures? In hats? In iron?



governors. These men had very high salaries, and spent their time chiefly in quarreling with the assemblies, or in trying to extort money from the people.

4. **Writs of Assistance.**—The Navigation Act, which was so detested by the colonies, and so ruinous to their trade, created a large number of custom-house officers. They were like their royal masters, very tyrannical. To assist them in finding smuggled goods, they obtained Writs of Assistance, which were neither more nor less than legal permits to enter and search any man's house. No free people could submit to this.

5. **Immediate Cause of the Revolution.**—These were a few of the remote causes that led to the Revolution: the IMMEDIATE CAUSE sprang out of the attempt made by England to tax the colonies for the expense of the French and Indian war. The English Government said the war had been begun in their defense, and they ought to bear their share of the cost.

6. **Argument of the Colonies.**—The colonies answered to this effect: "No, we will not pay England's debts. We defended ourselves. We suffered heavily in men and money. England spent her money as much for her own pride and glory as for our good. Besides, we have learned that we can defend ourselves."

7. **England answers by a Tax Bill.**—The English Government treated this view with scorn. In 1764, the year after the close of the war, Parliament passed an act taxing a long list of articles imported into the colonies. The Americans remonstrated against this. They asserted that the English had no right to tax them without their consent; that they had no representation in the English Parliament; and that TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION WAS TYRANNY.

---

3. What is said of the royal governors?

4. What is said of the Navigation Act? What were Writs of Assistance?

5. What was the immediate cause of the Revolution? What did England say?

6. What was the argument of the colonies?

7. How did England treat this view? What did the Americans do and say?

8. **The Stamp Act—Quartering Act.**—The government replied to this by passing the Stamp Act, March, 1765. This levied a tax on all paper, vellum, and parchment, used in the colonies. No document could be legal without a stamp. There was passed also, at the same time, the Quartering Act—a very hateful and irritating measure. A standing army was ordered for the colonies, and the people were required to provide the troops with QUARTERS, bedding, fire-wood, drink, soap, and candles. It was a new thing to see British soldiers among the colonists in time of peace.

9. **Resistance in Virginia.**—The Assembly of Virginia was in session, in May, when the news of the passage of these acts arrived. The aristocratic members did not want to take any action; but a young lawyer, named Patrick Henry, sprang to his feet and presented a series of resolutions denouncing the conduct of England. His fiery eloquence carried the day, and they were passed.

10. **Massachusetts and other Colonies.**—In the same month Massachusetts spoke. She recommended that delegates from the different colonies should meet in New York in October, and consult on what ought to be done. The spirit of the people was thoroughly aroused. In June, copies of the Act were hawked about the streets of New York, headed “England’s Folly and America’s Ruin.”

11. **Sons of Liberty.**—The people of Boston met under a tree, which they named “Liberty Tree.” Upon this they hung in effigy those who favored the English Government. Soon associations called the “Sons of Liberty” spread among the Northern and Middle colonies. They were very active, and thoroughly frightened the officers appointed to distribute the stamps.

---

8. What was the answer of the English Government? What was the Stamp Act? When passed? The Quartering Act?

9. How was the news received in Virginia?

10. What was the conduct of Massachusetts? What was done in New York?

11. Who were the Sons of Liberty? What was their object?

**12. First Colonial Congress.**—The Colonial Congress met in October, 1765, at New York, and agreed on a "Declaration of Rights and Grievances of the Colonies." A petition to the king, and memorials to both houses of Parliament, were also prepared and adopted.

**13. The Operation of the Stamp Act.**—The 1st of November, the day when the Stamp Act was to go into operation, at length arrived. Not a stamp was to be seen. The frightened stamp-distributors had everywhere resigned. The royal governors dared not say a word; and business, in a few days, went on as usual without stamps.

**14. Non-importation Agreement.**—The colonists did not stop here. The merchants generally, throughout the colonies, agreed to import no more goods from England till the Stamp Act was repealed. The people also entered into a combination to wear garments made only of American cloths.

**15. Repeal of the Stamp Act.**—The English manufacturers and merchants felt this severely. The government also was alarmed; for the firmness of the colonies surprised them. Accordingly, in March, 1766, the Stamp Act was repealed. In repealing it, they still asserted "the right and power of England to bind the colonies in all cases whatsoever."

**16. A new Tax Bill passed.**—In a few months, January, 1767, a bill was passed in Parliament taxing tea, paints, paper, glass, and lead, used in the colonies. This roused the anger of the people to a higher point than ever. They renewed their former non-importation agreements, and the newspapers were filled with patriotic pieces.

**17. Military sent to Boston.**—Boston was considered by

12. What is said of the Colonial Congress?

13. State what is said of the First of November.

14. What did the merchants agree to? And the people?

15. What followed, and why? How was this apparent concession on the part of the government modified?

16. How did the government show their true feeling? How did the people meet this?

England as the very focus of rebellion, and four regiments, under General Gage, were ordered there, in September, 1768, to overawe the people. The authorities would not supply the troops with quarters, and some of them were put by Gage into Fanenil (*fan'il*) Hall. This was the great public room where the patriots often met, and has been called the Cradle of American Liberty.

18. **Riot in Boston.**—The citizens, naturally, hated the red-coats, and the troops repaid the hatred. Quarrels took place, and on March 5, 1770, a picket-guard fired upon the crowd, killing three citizens and wounding eight. The towns-people rose in a body, and Gage was forced to remove the soldiers from the town to the fort in the harbor.

19. **Government relents.**—Meanwhile the English merchants suffered severely from the non-importation agreements among the Americans. At length the English Government relented, and a bill was passed in May, 1773, repealing the tax on all articles except tea. The government no longer hoped to raise revenue; it was contending only for the right to tax the colonies.

20. **The Tax on Tea resisted.**—To establish this right, the duty on tea was made only threepence a pound: the colonists were really to get their tea cheaper than the English people. But the Americans saw through the plan, and scorned the concession: they would pay no taxes to the English Government.

21. **Arrival of the first Tea-ship.**—The colonial merchants generally agreed to import no tea: the English merchants, therefore, resolved to send it at their own risk. The first of the tea-ships arrived at Boston November 25, 1773, and a committee of the people notified the captain

---

17. How did England attempt to punish Boston? How did the people act?

18. What occurred in Boston?

19. What was the effect of the non-importation and other agreements? What was the government contending for?

20. What was the amount of the tax on tea? Why did not the Americans pay this small tax?

that they would not permit it to be landed. The captain would gladly have returned to England, but the governor would not allow him to leave.

22. **Boston Tea-party.**—The patience of the people was worn out, and they proceeded to settle the business in their own way. On the night of December 16, forty citizens, disguised as Indians, went to the vessels, took out the tea-chests, 342 in number, and emptied the contents into Boston harbor. This was done in the presence of thousands of spectators; yet their secret was so well kept, that not one of them was ever discovered.

23. **The Tea at other Places.**—At New York and Philadelphia, the people would not permit the tea to be landed; in Charleston, it was stored in damp cellars, and soon became worthless.

24. **Boston punished.**—The indignation of the government was very great when the news of the Boston business reached England. "Boston," said they, "must be punished;" and Parliament at once passed the Boston Port Bill, prohibiting all ships from landing there. At the same time the port and seat of government were removed to Salem. In addition, General Gage was appointed Governor of Massachusetts.

25. **Excitement in the Colonies.**—This severity on the part of the English Government only roused the spirit of the colonies, and they adopted the cause of Boston as their own. The Virginia Assembly, for example, appointed the day when the Boston Port Bill was to go into operation, June 1, 1774, as a fast-day. For this the governor dissolved the Assembly.

26. **First Continental Congress.**—Presently it was agreed among the colonies that a colonial Congress should meet

---

21. What is said of the colonial and English merchants? What took place on the arrival of the first tea-ship?

22. How was the question of the tea-ship settled? What was done to those who were active in this?

23. How was the tea disposed of at other places?

24. How did the government treat Boston? Who was made governor?

25. Did the colonies look quietly on? What did they do?

in September. On the 5th of that month, delegates from all the colonies, except Georgia, met in Philadelphia, and formed the First Continental Congress. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen president, and Charles Thomson, of Pennsylvania, secretary.

**27. Declaration of Rights.**—The delegates passed a Declaration of Rights, together with addresses to the king and people of England. At the same time, they recommended the suspension of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain. They then adjourned to meet at Philadelphia, May 10, 1775.

**28. Active Measures taken.**—Governor Gage, in September, 1774, began to fortify Boston Neck; he also seized some powder stored by the patriots, at Cambridge. On the other hand, the Massachusetts Provincial Congress called out the militia, ordered them to train and be ready at a minute's notice, and voted £20,000 for expenses.

**29. The leading Patriots in Massachusetts** were John Hancock, Samuel Adams, John Adams, and Joseph Warren. The last sealed his patriotism with his life in the second battle of the Revolutionary War.

**30. Colonies only desire their Rights.**—Both sides were preparing to fight. The colonists did not desire this—the struggle was forced upon them in defense of their dearest rights. They did not as yet seek for independence. In spite of all she had done, the mass of the colonists had continued to be proud of Old England. But this regard was fast wearing away. The lines were already drawn between the king's friends, or Tories, and the patriots, or Whigs—names adopted from English politics.

---

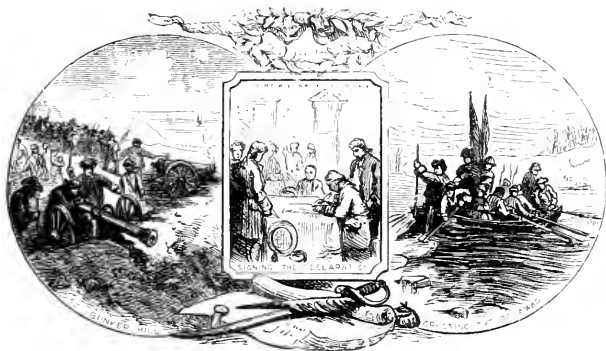
26. What agreement was made? When and where did it meet, and who were its officers? By what name is it known?

27. What measures were passed? To what time did it adjourn?

28. What were the movements of Gage? What was done by Massachusetts? Who were the minute-men?

29. Who were the leading patriots in Massachusetts? What is said of Warren?

30. What is said of the feeling of the colonists? By what names were they beginning to be known?



## CHAPTER VI.

### WAR OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

#### EVENTS OF 1775.

1. **First Movements.**—Sixteen miles north-west from Boston lay the village of Concord. Here the provincials had collected a quantity of stores, and General Gage determined to destroy them. He kept his plans very secret, and on the night of the 18th of April sent out 800 regulars from Boston. Sharp patriot eyes were watching the movements of the British, and swift horsemen at once started from Boston to warn the minute-men.

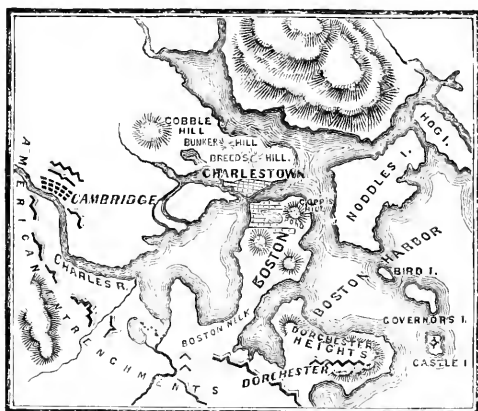
2. **The Killing at Lexington Green.**—Before sunrise next morning seventy or eighty of these were assembled on the green at Lexington, within six miles of Concord. The head of the British column soon appeared, and their commanding officer, as he rode forward, shouted, "Throw down your arms, you rebels, and disperse!" The patriots did not immediately obey, and the regulars fired, killing seven of the minute-men, and wounding others.

3. **Fight at Concord Bridge—The Retreat.**—The British

1. Where is Concord, and what was there? What is said of Gage? How did the patriots prepare for him?

2. What happened at Lexington Green? Where was this?

then marched to Concord, and destroyed the stores. Before this was completed, large bodies of minute-men arrived, and a skirmish took place at Concord Bridge. Then began the retreat: it was full time, for the country far and near was roused. Even boys of fifteen and men of seventy hastened to take part in the fight. From behind fences, and stone-walls, and trees, and buildings, the patriots fired on the long line of British.



BOSTON AND ITS VICINITY, 1775-6.

4. Re-enforcements from Gage.—Through these six miles the British fought their weary way to Lexington. It looked as though not one of them would ever reach Boston. Fortunately for them, re-enforcements sent by General Gage met them at Lexington. By this time they were so utterly worn out, that when their new comrades opened ranks to receive them, they threw themselves exhausted on the ground.

5. Close of the Fight—its Cost.—When they had rested awhile, the whole force made its way to Charlestown,

3. What occurred at Concord? Who were the minute-men? What forced the British to retreat? What is said of it?

4. In what condition did the British reach Lexington? What saved them?



harassed by the Americans. In the entire retreat the British lost nearly 300 men; the American loss was 90. Such was the running fight, or Battle of Lexington, as it was called—the first of the Revolutionary War.

6. **Effect of the Battle of Lexington.**—The news of the fight spread like fire over the prairie. Men left their farms and their workshops, and rushed to Boston. There were soon 20,000 militia, under General Ward, behind intrenchments in front of that town, and General Gage found himself completely shut off from the country.

7. **The Patriots fortify Breed's Hill.**—In May, fresh troops from England increased Gage's force to 10,000 men. The patriots, fearing that the British would now attempt to force their way into the country, resolved to fortify Bunker Hill, which commanded the northern road. Colonel Prescott, with 1000 patriots, was ordered to fortify the hill, but, by mistake, went in the night to Breed's Hill, much nearer the town, and threw up intrenchments. When the morning broke, the British were surprised to see the works, and Gage at once determined to drive the Americans from them at any cost.

8. **Battle of Bunker Hill.**—At three o'clock in the afternoon of June 17th, 3000 picked British troops crossed the harbor, and, after landing, began to ascend the hill. Thousands of spectators, from the roofs and steeples in Boston, watched the movements with breathless anxiety. The Americans waited until the enemy were within 150 yards, and then poured on them a destructive fire. The British staggered, then broke, and retreated in dismay. A second attempt ended the same way.

9. **The final Attack.**—The third time the British were re-enforced. The patriots' ammunition was exhausted, and the British, taking advantage of this, pushed forward,

5. At what place did they arrive at last? What was the loss on both sides?

6. What was the first effect of the battle?

7. Why did the Americans determine to fortify Bunker Hill? What hill did they fortify, and why? On what did Gage resolve when he saw this?

8. Describe the first assault of the British? How many assaults were there?

sprang over the earth-works, and the hill was gained. It was a dearly-won British victory, for it cost them over 1000 in killed and wounded. The American loss was about 450; but among these was the active patriot, Dr. Warren. The battle, although fought on Breed's Hill, has always been known as the Battle of Bunker Hill.

10. **The Second Continental Congress** met in the month of May, at Philadelphia, as agreed upon. They passed resolutions affirming their strong desire for peace, and declaring that they had no desire to throw off their allegiance to Great Britain. At the same time they voted that the colonies should be prepared for war, and that they would never willingly submit to British taxation.

11. **Washington made Commander-in-Chief.**—Congress, on June 15, elected George Washington to the command of the army. He set out for Boston without delay; but before he arrived the battle of Bunker Hill had been fought. He immediately took command of the troops, and proceeded to bring the militia under strict military discipline.

12. **Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.**—On the day that Congress met, Ticonderoga, celebrated in the French and Indian War, was captured from the British by Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold. A few days after, Crown Point was captured, May 12th.

13. **Expedition against Canada.**—These important successes opened the road to Canada, and in August it was decided to attack the British power in that quarter. The expedition consisted of two divisions. One went by way of Lake Champlain, under Generals Schuyler and Montgomery; the other, under Arnold, went north, through the wilderness of Maine. Both were to unite in an attack on Quebec.

---

9. What is said of the final attack? What is said of the loss? What leading man was killed?

10. Where and when did the Continental Congress meet? What did it do?

11. What important appointment did it make? What was his age?

12. What two celebrated places were captured? Where are they situated?

13. To what expedition did this lead? Describe the plan of the expedition.

**14. Movements of Montgomery and Arnold.**—Montgomery captured St. John's, on the Sorel River, and entered Montreal, November 13, with his force reduced to 300 men; he then pushed for Quebec, near which Arnold, with 900 men, was waiting for him on the Plains of Abraham. When both divisions were united, there were less than 1000 fit for duty. A useless siege of three weeks followed. At last an assault was ordered, on a cold, snowy morning, December 31, when the Americans met with a severe repulse. Montgomery was killed, and Arnold was severely wounded.

**15. Failure of the Expedition.**—The troops fell back to a point three miles from the city, where, behind intrenchments of snow, they passed a wretched winter. In the following spring re-enforcements came, but nothing was gained. The British in turn were re-enforced, and the Americans, utterly broken-spirited, were compelled to flee from Canada.

**16. The Revolution in Virginia.**—In the colonies south of New England there were stirring times. Early in 1775, the people of Virginia drove the royal governor from the province. In April he returned, in a British man-of-war, and revenged himself by burning the town of Norfolk, the richest in Virginia.

**17. In the Carolinas and Georgia.**—The people of North Carolina, in May, met at Charlotte, and declared themselves FREE and INDEPENDENT of the mother country. This was the first declaration of independence throughout the colonies. In South Carolina and Georgia the people rose against the royal governors, and expelled them.

14. Describe Montgomery's movements. Who arrived at Quebec first? What was their combined force? Describe what followed.

15. Where did the Americans go? What happened in the spring of 1776?

16. What meanwhile had occurred in Virginia?

17. What remarkable step was taken in North Carolina? What was done in South Carolina and Georgia?

1776.

1. **British Plan to capture New York.**—In January the British in Boston were preparing an expedition, under Sir Henry Clinton, to capture the city of New York. Washington suspected this, and sent General Charles Lee with re-enforcements to that place. On the very day that Clinton arrived off Sandy Hook, Lee marched into New York; and Clinton, on learning of his arrival, sailed off south, to the capes of Virginia.

2. **Americans on Dorchester Heights.**—Washington's steady purpose was to drive the British from Boston. Early in March, he, in the night, threw up intrenchments on Dorchester Heights, which commanded the city. General Howe, who had succeeded General Gage in command of the British, at once saw that the Americans must be driven from this, or he must leave Boston.

3. **Evacuation of Boston.**—A storm prevented his attacking the intrenchments for a day or two. By the time the storm had subsided the works had been made so strong that Howe saw it was useless to attempt an assault, and agreed to leave the town. On the 17th of March, he embarked his troops on board his vessels, taking with him some 1500 loyalists, and sailed for Halifax. Washington then took possession of Boston.

4. **British move against Charleston.**—Washington being anxious about New York, sent off the main body of his army to that place. The British had, meanwhile, changed their purpose, and, being heavily re-enforced from England, had sailed against Charleston, South Carolina. The land force was under the command of Clinton, and Sir Peter Parker was admiral of the fleet.

---

1. What was going on at Boston? How did Washington meet this? What was the result?

2. What happened in the neighborhood of Boston in March? Why were Dorchester Heights so important? How did Howe regard this movement?

3. What prevented Howe from attacking? What followed?

4. To what point, and why, did Washington turn his attention? Was it necessary at that time? Why not? What is said of the British expedition?

**5. Attack on Fort Moultrie.**—The Carolina patriots had thrown up some rude works on the lower end of Sullivan's Island, and named them Fort Moultrie. The ships attacked these on the 28th of June, but were met by so heavy a fire that they were forced to retire with severe loss. The British did not renew the attack, and soon after sailed north to join the troops that were assembling on Staten Island for an attack on New York.

**6. British Forces on Staten Island.**—General Howe was already there from Halifax with all the old Boston army. Other re-enforcements came from England under his brother, Admiral Lord Howe, making in all some 30,000 men. A large part of these were Hessians, hired troops from Hesse Cassel, in Germany.

**7. Battle of Long Island.**—Washington, who was now at New York, had under him 17,000 men. The greater part were at an intrenched camp, south of Brooklyn, under General Putnam. Howe crossed his troops from Staten Island, and on the 27th of August moved forward in three divisions. While two of these engaged the attention of the Americans, the third, under Clinton, took a wide circuit, and, getting into their rear, drove them into confusion. They lost 2000 men, and retreated rapidly to their camp, where Washington had arrived.

**8. The Americans escape to New York.**—The British delayed making an assault on the works, and waited for their ships to come into the East River. They intended to leave the Americans no chance to escape. Washington saw through their plan, and on the 29th, under cover of a heavy fog, crossed with his troops to New York, before the British had the slightest idea of his movements.

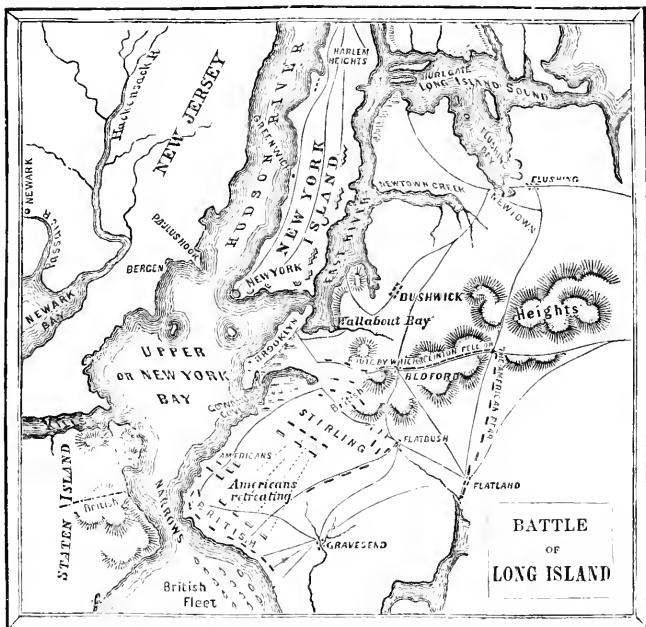
**9. Movements of the two Armies.**—Washington soon fell back to a strong position on the heights of Harlem,

5. Describe the attack on Ft. Moultrie. Whither did the British sail, and why?

6. What forces were assembled on Staten Island?

7. What number of men had Washington? Where were they? Describe the movements of the British, and the battle of Long Island.

8. What followed? How was the American army saved?



and Howe occupied the city of New York. From Harlem the Americans retired to White Plains, followed by Howe. Here an action took place, on the 28th of October, in which Washington was defeated, and compelled to retire to North Castle. Howe saw that it was useless to follow Washington north, and encamped in the neighborhood of Dobb's Ferry. Washington left a part of his army at Peekskill, and, crossing the Hudson, pushed down to Fort Lee.

10. **Forts Washington and Lee captured.**—Opposite Fort Lee was Fort Washington, on Manhattan Island, garrisoned by 2000 Americans under Colonel Magaw. This

9. Describe the movements of the two armies until October 28th. What then took place? What were the movements after this? Where is Fort Lee?

was within Howe's lines, and the British attacked and captured it, together with the entire garrison, after a bloody struggle. Lord Cornwallis was immediately sent across the river with a strong force to take Fort Lee, which was hastily abandoned on his approach Nov. 20.

**11. Washington's Retreat through New Jersey.**—Then came the retreat of the Americans across New Jersey. Washington, chased by Cornwallis, abandoned successively Newark, Elizabethtown, New Brunswick. At last the Delaware River was reached. The weary Americans crossed over into Pennsylvania on December 8, and Cornwallis put his troops into winter-quarters at different points on the Jersey side of the river.

**12. Battle of Trenton.**—It appeared as though the American cause was lost. New York had been taken; New Jersey was overrun, and the English were only waiting for the spring to take Philadelphia. Just then the energy of Washington shone forth. Suddenly, on Christmas night, he crossed the Delaware through the floating ice, and early next morning, in a storm of sleet, captured over 1000 Hessians who were quartered at Trenton.

**13. The Effect on the British and Americans.**—Cornwallis, who thought every thing was safe for the winter, was more than surprised. He drew in his scattered troops from the river bank and set a watch on his enemy. The battle of Trenton, on the other hand, sent joy among the Americans. It was a gleam of light amidst the darkness and disaster that had been increasing ever since the battle of Long Island.

**14. Congress adopts the Declaration of Independence.**—Congress, during the year, was in constant session in Philadelphia. It was very busy providing the means to

10. Where was Fort Washington? Who held it? What took place here? What happened at Fort Lee?

11. Describe the retreat across New Jersey. How did it end? See Map, p. 95.

12. What was the state of the American cause? How was it retrieved? Describe the battle.

13. What was the effect of the battle on the British? On the Americans? Why?

carry on the war. It had little money, and the colonies had no credit abroad. In one particular, the year 1776 was the most important of its work. On the 4th of July it passed the famous Declaration of Independence from Great Britain forever. This made the colonies a nation under the name of the United States. The great man who wrote this Declaration was Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, assisted by Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania, Roger Sherman, of Connecticut, Robert R. Livingston, of New York, and John Adams, of Massachusetts.

**15. The Colonists are offered Pardon.**—A few days after this was passed, Admiral Howe and his brother offered the colonies terms of reconciliation with Great Britain. They sent a circular letter through the country offering pardon to those who would submit, and threatening those who refused. But Congress and the colonies cared little about it.

**16. Further Attempts to make Peace.**—After the battle of Long Island the two Howes sent to Congress, asking for a committee to confer with them. They thought that after the defeat the Americans would be more yielding. The committee met them on Staten Island, but nothing came of the conference. The English commissioners had no authority to treat of independence: the Americans, on the other hand, would accept nothing less.

**17. Congress seeks Help from France.**—In December, Congress sent Benjamin Franklin, Silas Deane, and Arthur Lee, to France, to seek assistance. France was not yet willing to help the Americans openly, for she was at peace with England, but she found means to assist them privately.

---

14. What is said of Congress? Why was the year 1776 so important? Who wrote this? Who formed the committee with Jefferson?

15. What was done by the two Howes? How was it noticed?

16. What other effort was made by Howe? How did this succeed?

17. Who were sent to France, and why? With what success did they meet?



1777.

1. **Washington and Cornwallis at Trenton.**—Washington was encamped at Trenton in the beginning of January, 1777. Cornwallis moved in force from Princeton to attack him, and on the night of the 2d of January was in front of his camp. Washington was in a dangerous position, with the Delaware in his rear and the British in front.

2. **Cornwallis outgeneraled—Battle of Princeton.**—He quickly formed his plans, and sent off his heavy baggage down the river through the night. With his troops he moved round Cornwallis's army early in the morning, and marched rapidly to Princeton. Near this place he met some British on their way to join Cornwallis, and defeated them, January 3.

3. **The American Army at Morristown.**—Cornwallis heard the firing, and moved quickly to Princeton, but, before his arrival, Washington was well on the road toward Morristown. Here, among the hills, his feeble army spent the winter. He made so very good use of his men, however, that when spring came, the British had been compelled to abandon every post in New Jersey, except New Brunswick and Perth Amboy.



SEAT OF WAR IN NEW JERSEY.

1. What movement was made by Cornwallis in January? What was Washington's situation?
2. How was Cornwallis outgeneraled? What battle followed?
3. Describe Cornwallis's movements. Where did Washington spend the winter? How did he employ a part of his army?

4. **Burning of Danbury.**—The active operations of the spring began with an expedition sent by General Tryon, of New York, against Danbury, Connecticut. It went in vessels, by the Sound, and landing between Fairfield and Norwalk, April 26, marched to Danbury, and destroyed the American stores collected there. On their way back to the Sound, the British were attacked by the militia, and lost 300 men. Among the Americans killed was General Wooster, a veteran of the French and Indian war.

5. **Attack on Sag Harbor.**—As an offset to this, Colonel Meigs, with 120 Connecticut men, crossed the Sound in whale-boats, and destroyed a great quantity of stores and twelve vessels at Sag Harbor, Long Island. They also took ninety prisoners, and returned without losing a man.

6. **Arrival of foreign Officers.**—The army was greatly benefited by the arrival of foreign officers from France and Germany. A young nobleman, the Marquis de Lafayette, fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and arrived this year. Baron Steuben, a Prussian officer, and Baron de Kalb, also joined the army, together with Kosciusko and Pulaski, two young Polish patriots.

7. **British abandon New Jersey.**—Through the winter, the British were chiefly confined to New Brunswick and Perth Amboy. In the spring, General Howe tried to draw Washington into a general battle, but the latter was too wary, and Howe finally withdrew the British to Staten Island. At Sandy Hook his troops embarked on board his brother's fleet, and then sailed to Chesapeake Bay.

8. **Seat of War changed to Pennsylvania.**—Howe's object was to capture Philadelphia. He could not go up the Delaware River, because that was guarded by two

---

4. What expedition was there in the spring? Describe the operations.

5. How was this revenged?

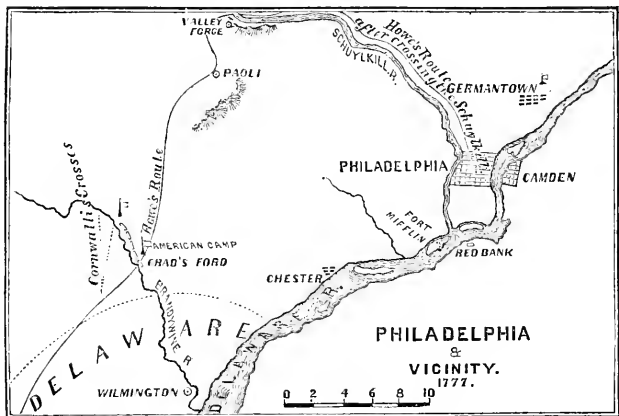
6. What distinguished nobleman came from France? Name the other foreigners mentioned.

7. What attempts were made by the British? What did Howe finally do?

forts and several war vessels below Philadelphia. He landed at the head of Chesapeake Bay, August 25.

9. **The British cross the Brandywine.**—As soon as Washington understood Howe's object, he moved rapidly to Pennsylvania, and met the British at a place called Chad's Ford, on the Brandywine River, September 11. A battle took place here, in which Washington was defeated with the loss of 1200 men.

10. **They enter Philadelphia.**—The Americans fell back as the British advanced. At Paoli, General Wayne, while watching the enemy, was himself surprised, September 20, and lost 300 men. Washington, with his



weakened army, did not dare to hazard another battle for the defense of Philadelphia, and retired to Pottsgrove, on the Schuylkill. The British entered Philadelphia September 26.

8. What was Howe's object? Why did he take this roundabout way? When and where did he land?

9. What steps did Washington take to prevent this? What battle took place, and when? For what did Washington risk this battle?

10. What followed the battle? What happened at Paoli? Why did not Washington hazard another battle? What was the result?

**11. Battle of Germantown.**—The bulk of the enemy was encamped at Germantown, near Philadelphia. On the night of October 3, Washington marched from his camp, fourteen miles off, and at sunrise next morning, October 4, attacked the British. Every thing at first promised an easy victory, for the enemy were surprised; but in the fog of the morning the Americans were separated, the enemy rallied, and Washington was compelled to retreat with the loss of 1000 men.

**12. The Forts on the Delaware.**—Although Howe was in Philadelphia, he felt that his situation was unsafe so long as the American forts held command of the river. These were known as forts Mercer, or Red Bank, and Mifflin. On the 22d of October 1200 Hessians attacked Fort Mercer, and were repulsed. Their commander, Count Donop, and 400 men were killed.

**13. Fort Mifflin and Fort Mercer lost.**—From November 10th to the 15th Fort Mifflin was bombarded, and so much injured that the Americans were forced to abandon it. This led to the abandonment of Fort Mercer, two days after; and now the river was open to the British. Washington took his army into winter-quarters at Valley Forge. This ended the year's campaign in that quarter.

**14. Events in the North—Burgoyne's Invasion.**—While the British were moving against Philadelphia, another expedition was started from Canada, to come down to the Hudson, through Lake Champlain. The object was to cut off the communication between the Eastern and Middle States. This seemed the more easy to be done, as Washington was occupied with Howe in Pennsylvania.

---

11. How did Washington try to retrieve his misfortunes? Tell why he did not succeed.

12. Why did Howe consider his position insecure? Describe the attack on Fort Mercer.

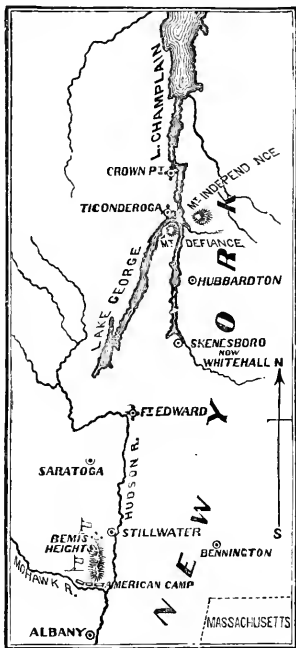
13. What attack was made in November? What was the result? How did the year's campaign here close?

14. What expedition approached from the north? What was its object? Did this seem easy?

15. **Burgoyne takes Ticonderoga.**—Burgoyne, with 8000 men, appeared before Ticonderoga, held by General St. Clair, on the 2d of July. This place was taken with trifling resistance. The garrison retreated rapidly, but were overtaken and badly beaten at Hubbardton, July 7. The wreck of St. Clair's troops made their way to Fort Edward, where General Schuyler was in command of 5000 raw militia, called the Army of the North.

16. **He reaches Fort Edward.**—Burgoyne's army was at Skenesborough, twenty-four miles from Fort Edward. Schuyler's principal object now was to gain time, so that the militia could be assembled from the neighboring country. He therefore broke up the roads, by destroying the bridges and felling trees in the way. He did this so well that Burgoyne was two weeks in reaching the Hudson. On his approach Fort Edward was abandoned, July 29, and the American army retired to Stillwater, near the mouth of the Mohawk.

17. **The Death of Miss M'Crea.**—As Burgoyne was approaching the fort, occurred the death of Miss M'Crea, a young lady betrothed to a loyalist officer in Burgoyne's army. She was captured by Indians near Fort Edward;



BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN.

15. What place was first taken, and when? What followed? Who commanded the Americans?

16. Where was Burgoyne? What was Schuyler's plan? How did he accomplish this? What point did the British reach?

and while they were conveying her to the British camp, the Americans in the fort fired on her captors, and Miss M'Crea was killed. The story spread that she had been killed and scalped by the savages. It greatly increased the hatred toward the British, and brought many volunteers to the American camp.

**18. St. Leger's Expedition up the Mohawk.**—While Burgoyne was on Lake Champlain, he sent Colonel St. Leger, with some Canadians, Tories, and Indians, into the valley of the Mohawk, to raise the Tories in that quarter. He laid siege to Fort Schuyler, where Rome now stands, August 3. General Herkimer, with 800 militia, marched to the relief of the garrison, but fell into an ambuscade, and was killed. While this was going on, the garrison repulsed a part of St. Leger's force. That officer, learning that Arnold, sent by Schuyler, was approaching, and being abandoned by his Indian allies, abandoned the siege and retreated to Canada.

**19. Battle of Bennington.**—Here were disasters enough already fallen on Burgoyne: the delayed march to Fort Edward, and loss of precious time—the murder of Miss M'Crea, and rousing of the country—the loss of St. Leger. Now came another. Burgoyne sent 800 men to Bennington, to seize the stores collected there. Colonel Stark, at the head of the Green Mountain militia, met and defeated them. This was scarce done, when there came another fresh body of British, and, fortunately, they were also met and defeated by a fresh body of Americans, under Colonel Warner. Thus there were really two battles on the same day, August 16.

**20. Burgoyne at a Stand.**—Burgoyne began to despair about going down the Hudson. He would gladly have

---

17. Who was Miss M'Crea? Describe the story of her murder. What effect did it produce?

18. Where was St. Leger sent? With what object? What place did he reach? What happened here? What was the result of the expedition?

19. What statement is made of Burgoyne's disasters? What was the object of the Bennington expedition? Describe it.

gone back to Ticonderoga, but the militia were gathered in large numbers in his rear. Presently he received fresh supplies of provisions, and crossed the Hudson to the plains of Saratoga, where he threw up intrenchments.

**21. First Battle of Stillwater.**—Congress, meanwhile, had taken away the command from Schuyler and given it to General Gates. He left the position at the mouth of the Mohawk and encamped on Bemis's Heights, near Burgoyne. On the 19th of September Burgoyne risked a battle, which, after severe fighting, ended in his favor. But it was not decisive, and the two armies lay within cannon-shot, watching each other, for two weeks.

**22. Second Battle of Stillwater.**—Burgoyne's case was becoming more desperate every day. He was short of provisions, and completely hemmed in. On October 7 he risked another battle, and was beaten, with the loss of 400 men and a part of his intrenched camp. Soon after he fell back to Saratoga, hoping to receive help from Clinton, who was advancing from New York.

**23. Surrender of Burgoyne.**—But the Americans would give him no rest, and increased in numbers every day. Besides, he had only three days' provisions in camp. In despair he surrendered his army of 6000 men, with all his cannon, muskets, and ammunition, to General Gates, on the 17th of October, 1777.

**24. Clinton's Movements.**—Clinton, who was making his way up the Hudson to Burgoyne's help, had captured forts Clinton and Montgomery, at the entrance to the Highlands. When he heard the news of the surrender he dismantled the forts, and, after burning the village of Kingston, returned to New York.

20. What was Burgoyne's situation? What movement did he make?

21. Who now commanded the Americans? What did he do? What happened on the 19th of September?

22. What was now Burgoyne's situation? How did he attempt to benefit himself? His success. What were his hopes?

23. To what point was he reduced? What was the end?

24. Where, meanwhile, was Clinton? How did the news of the surrender affect his movements?

**25. Effect of Burgoyne's Surrender.**—This extraordinary event—the surrender of a British army, with all of its splendid train of artillery, tents, and baggage—caused great rejoicing throughout the country. It served to raise the drooping spirits of the patriots, who were greatly cast down by the success of Howe and the capture of Philadelphia. It produced still more important results abroad, which we shall see in the history of the next year.

### 1778.

**1. The Condition of the two Armies.**—The American army spent a wretched winter, in their huts, at Valley Forge. They were without shoes, and many of them were in rags; often they were short of provisions. On the other hand, the British troops in Philadelphia were enjoying themselves in comfortable quarters.

**2. England's Offers of Peace.**—When spring opened, the state of affairs began to brighten. The capture of Burgoyne thoroughly alarmed the English Government, and in January two bills were passed in Parliament to conciliate the Americans. One of these renounced all intention to tax America, the other appointed five commissioners to treat with the colonies for the restoration of English authority. These measures wholly failed, for Congress would listen to no terms but independence.

**3. French Alliance and Help.**—The surrender of Burgoyne had also a powerful influence in France. That court, in February, concluded two treaties with the United States—one, of commerce; the other, of offensive and defensive alliance against Great Britain. A French fleet, under Count D'Estaing (*da-stang'*), was dispatched, about the middle of April, to the assistance of the Americans.

---

25. What effect did the surrender of Burgoyne produce on the American people?

1. Where, and in what condition, was Washington's army during the winter? The British army?

2. How did the capture of Burgoyne affect the English? What did Government do? How were these offers received?

3. What great event occurred in February, 1778? What immediate help was sent?



4. **The British leave Philadelphia.**—The English Government was on the alert. General Howe was recalled, and Sir Henry Clinton succeeded to the command. As the French fleet, which was daily expected off the coast, might block up the mouth of the Delaware, the British fleet in that river was ordered to Sandy Hook. Clinton was also ordered to evacuate Philadelphia. He accordingly left that city, June 18, and pushed across New Jersey to New York.

5. **The Pursuit—Battle of Monmouth.**—Washington followed him, and came up with him at Monmouth, where a severe battle was fought, June 28. Lee led the advance, but at first was compelled to fall back in some disorder. Washington, hurrying up with the main body, restored the battle, which ended without any gain on either side. Before sunrise next morning Clinton was well on his way to Raritan Bay, where he embarked on the fleet for New York. Washington gave up the pursuit.

6. **Lee is Court-martialed.**—When Washington saw the disorder of Lee's division during the battle, he reprimanded him with some severity. Lee's pride was hurt, and he addressed two improper letters to his general, in one of which he demanded satisfaction. Washington promptly ordered him under arrest. He was then tried by court-martial, and sentenced to be suspended from the service for one year; but he never rejoined the army.

7. **The French at Rhode Island.**—In July the French fleet, with 4000 troops on board, arrived in the Delaware, but too late to blockade the British fleet, which was then safe in Raritan Bay. An expedition was therefore arranged against the British on Rhode Island, and General Sullivan, with an American force, was ordered to co-operate with D'Estaing in the attack. Before this was made,

---

4. What change took place at Philadelphia? What orders were given, and by whom? When did Clinton leave? Where did he go?

5. What is said of the pursuit? Of the battle that followed? What was the result of the battle?

6. What is said of Lee's conduct? What was done to Lee?

Lord Howe appeared off Narragansett Bay. The two fleets tried to engage, August 10; but a storm shattered them both, and D'Estaing sailed to Boston to refit, while Howe returned to New York.

8. **Failure of the Expedition.**—Meanwhile Sullivan had moved against General Pigot's lines at Newport. Finding himself unsupported by the French fleet, he fell back to the north end of the island, pursued by the British. There, August 29, was fought the obstinate battle of Quaker Hill, in which the British were repulsed. On the night of the 30th Sullivan withdrew his army to the main land. It was well that he did so; for Clinton arrived from New York next day at Newport, with a squadron and 4000 men.

9. **The British ravage the Coast-towns.**—Some of these troops were sent, under General Grey, to ravage the coast to the eastward. Grey destroyed the shipping, laid waste New Bedford, Fair Haven, and Martha's Vineyard, and returned with much plunder to New York.

10. **Massacre of Wyoming.**—Cruel as Grey was, he was far surpassed by the Tories and Indians, under Colonel Butler and a chief of the Senecas, in Pennsylvania. In July, 1100 of them entered the beautiful valley of Wyoming, laid waste the fields, burned the houses, and murdered the inhabitants. The same kind of cruelties was perpetrated at Cherry Valley, New York, in November following. The employment of Indians by the British in the war, and the dreadful atrocities committed by them, increased the feeling of bitter hatred against England.

11. **The War changes to the South.**—The chief scene of the war was now to be changed to the South. In December Clinton sent Colonel Campbell with an expedition to

7. What is said of the arrival of the French fleet? What use was made of it? What happened to it?

8. How did this affect Sullivan's movements? What battle was fought? How did Sullivan save his army? Why was he fortunate in this?

9. What expedition followed? What is said of it?

10. Where is Wyoming? What happened in the valley in July? What other place suffered in the same way? What is said of the Indians?

attack Savannah, in Georgia. This was successful, and General Robert Howe, the American commander, surrendered, with the garrison, December 29.

12. **The Results of the War.**—The war had now lasted five years, and the British held only New York, Savannah, and Rhode Island. The Americans, though poor and suffering, had now the French openly active on their side, and fought on, determined to gain their independence.

## 1779.

1. **The War in the South — Georgia.**—General Prevost took command of the British forces in Georgia early in January. On the 9th of the same month Sunbury was surrendered to him. He then sent Colonel Campbell to Augusta to organize the Tories, who were numerous in that neighborhood. Seven hundred of these put themselves under Colonel Boyd, and set out toward Augusta. On their way they were attacked, February 14, at Kettle Creek, by the Carolina militia, under Colonel Pickens, and defeated with heavy loss.

2. **Americans defeated at Brier Creek.**—Lincoln, the American general, took advantage of this, and sent General Ashe to threaten Augusta. Campbell at once fell back to Brier Creek, about half way to Savannah. Ashe followed him, but was surprised, March 3, by Campbell, and his whole force destroyed or dispersed.

3. **Prevost moves on Charleston.**—Prevost, on hearing of this defeat, pushed to Charleston, and demanded its surrender. Lincoln, being re-enforced, moved rapidly to its support, and pressed Prevost so closely that the latter was forced to retire to the island of St. John. Lincoln followed him, and the battle of Stono Ferry was fought, June 20, in which Lincoln was repulsed with severe loss. Shortly after, Prevost fell back into Georgia, and the hot

---

11. Where did the English send an expedition? Its success.

12. What had the British gained so far? What is said of the Americans?

1. Who took command in Georgia? What led to the battle of Kettle Creek?

2. What advantage was taken of this defeat? What was the result?

and sickly season put a stop to military operations for several months.

4. **American Repulse at Savannah.**—In the month of September a combined attack on Savannah was made by the French fleet, under D'Estaing, and the Americans, under Lincoln. D'Estaing would not wait for the operations of a regular siege, and an assault was ordered, in which the French and Americans were repulsed with great loss. Among the killed was Count Pulaski. D'Estaing presently sailed away to the West Indies, and Lincoln fell back into South Carolina.

5. **Virginia ravaged.**—In May 2500 British from New York, under General Mathews, entered the Chesapeake. They sailed up the Elizabeth and the James rivers, burnt the shipping, destroyed \$2,000,000 worth of property, and brought away 3000 hogsheads of tobacco. This was merely a marauding expedition. Its sole object was plunder, or the destruction of American property.

6. **Events in the North—Stony Point.**—The bulk of the American army, under Washington, lay on and near the Hudson. Two forts had been erected at the entrance to the Highlands—one, on Stony Point; the other, on Verplanck's Point, opposite. In June both of these were taken by Clinton. In July Washington ordered General Wayne to recapture Stony Point at all hazards. At midnight, on the 15th, his troops moved to the attack, in two columns, and carried the works at the point of the bayonet with trifling loss. It was a most brilliant affair, but it proved of no great value, for the British came up the river in force, and the Americans abandoned the fort.

7. **Paulus Hook—Long Island Sound.**—A few days after, Major Lee surprised the British garrison at Paulus Hook,

---

3. How did Prevost improve this victory? Was he interrupted, and how? What battle occurred? See Map, p. 109. How did all these movements end?

4. What important attack was made in September? With what result? Why did the attack chiefly fail? Who was among the killed?

5. Give an account of the British expedition to Virginia.

6. What and where were the defenses of the Highlands? Describe its capture by the Americans. How long did it remain in their possession?

now Jersey City, and took 160 prisoners. While these events were taking place, Gen. Tryon, from New York, sailed through Long Island Sound, plundered New Haven, and burned Fairfield and Norwalk.

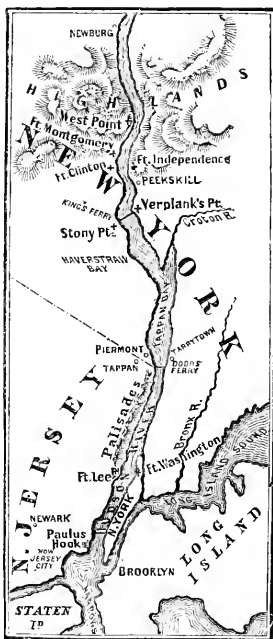
#### 8. Disaster on the Penobscot.—

A severe disaster happened as far east as the Penobscot River, in Maine. Some 1500 Massachusetts militia, sent in a flotilla to attack a British post on that river, were followed by five English war vessels. The whole flotilla was either destroyed or captured on the river, and the men were driven into the wilderness, August 13th.

#### 9. Indians punished.—

General Sullivan was sent in the summer to Western New York, to avenge the massacre of Wyoming and punish the Indians. He defeated them, August 29, at a place now known as Elmira, in the battle of the Chemung. After destroying the Indian villages and laying waste the country, he returned.

10. Naval Victory.—Paul Jones, an American officer, in command of three ships of war fitted out in France, was cruising near the British coast in September. He fell in with two heavily armed English frigates, and, at the close of a bloody engagement of three hours, both frigates surrendered to Jones.



THE HUDSON—NEWBURGH.

7. What occurred opposite New York about this time? Describe the British expedition to the eastward.

8. What disaster befell the Americans farther east? Narrate this.

9. Who was sent to Western New York? What happened there?

10. Who was Paul Jones? What occurred during his cruise?



1780.

1. **Events in the South—Capture of Charleston.**—Clinton left New York December 26, 1779, at the head of a large force, and appeared before Charleston, South Carolina, in February. The place was defended by General Lincoln. The siege began on the 1st of April. Tarleton, an active cavalry officer, was sent to cut off an American force stationed at Monk's Corner, thirty miles north of Charleston. He surprised and defeated them with severe loss. This and the loss of some other posts shut off Lincoln's communications with the country. The siege was meanwhile pressed with such vigor that Lincoln was forced to surrender Charleston, with 6000 men, May 12.

2. **Carolina subjugated.**—Clinton proceeded to overrun Carolina by sending off different expeditions. Tarleton, at the head of one of these, fell suddenly on a body of Americans under Colonel Buford, at Waxhaw (*wáh-haw*) Creek, May 29, and put nearly all of them to the sword. The other expeditions were also successful.

3. **Cornwallis in Command.**—Clinton thought his work was done in South Carolina, and, leaving Cornwallis in

---

1. What important movement was made in January? How was it defeated? What event hastened the surrender? When did it surrender?

2. How did Clinton follow this up? Narrate what is said of these.

command, sailed to New York. The Tories were very active, and large numbers joined the British. On the other hand, the patriot leaders, Marion, Sumter, and Pickens, rallied around them small bodies of men, who gave the British great trouble. At Hanging Rock, east of the Wateree River, on the 6th of August, Sumter defeated a large body of regulars and Tories.



4. Gates defeated at Camden.—There was no regular army at the South, and Congress sent Gates, the conqueror of Burgoyne, to form one. He gathered an army together, and met Cornwallis at Sanders's Creek, near Camden, South Carolina, August 16. The battle, which was short and violent, ended in the complete defeat of Gates. De Kalb, who was present, was mortally wounded.

5. Sumter defeated—Greene succeeds Gates.—This was not the only disaster. On the 18th of August Tarleton surprised Sumter on the Catawba, and destroyed nearly

3. Who was appointed to the command? Why was this? How did the American patriots act? Give an example of Sumter's activity.

4. Who was sent into Carolina, and why? What important event followed?

all his corps. Gates made some efforts to get together an army, but failed, and Congress appointed General Greene to his command.

6. **Battle of King's Mountain.**—Cornwallis moved into North Carolina, and sent Colonel Ferguson before him to rally the Tories in the mountainous region. Ferguson was attacked at King's Mountain, October 7, by Colonel Campbell and a number of backwoods riflemen, and was slain, with 150 of his men. Campbell's men were so incensed by the barbarities of the Tories in Ferguson's band, that they hung a number of the prisoners after the battle. Cornwallis, when he heard of the defeat, fell back into South Carolina.

7. **Events in the North—Suffering at Morristown.**—The American army, under Washington, was encamped among the hills of Morristown during the winter of 1779-'80. They suffered greatly for want of provisions, and could get no pay, for Congress could not send them money. When May came, there was absolute famine among them. To such a point did this reach, that two Connecticut regiments were about to march into the country and gain subsistence at the point of the bayonet, but were finally persuaded by Washington to remain in camp.

8. **British in New Jersey.**—In the absence of Clinton at Charleston, General Knyphausen (*nip'how-zen*), who was left in command at New York, heard of this state of things at Morristown, and thought it a good time to move into New Jersey. He was firmly met at Springfield by General Greene, where a sharp fight occurred, June 23. Knyphausen soon after returned to New York.

9. **The French at Newport.**—A French fleet, with 7000

---

5. What other disaster occurred? Who succeeded Gates? What movements were made by the British?

6. Describe the battle of King's Mountain. How did this affect Cornwallis?

7. Where was Washington's army during the winter? What was its condition? What happened in camp?

8. What advantage did the British take of this? How were they resisted?



men on board, arrived at Newport in July. Rhode Island had been evacuated by the British some time previous. Great things were hoped for from this assistance; but a heavy fleet arrived from England, and blockaded the French in Narragansett Bay.

**10. Treason of Arnold—his History.**—The great event of the year was the treason of Benedict Arnold. He had greatly distinguished himself by his reckless bravery, and Washington trusted him so much as to appoint him commander at Philadelphia after Clinton left that city. He married here into a wealthy family, and lived so far beyond his means that he became deeply involved in debt. His enemies charged him with embezzling the public funds; and on this charge he was tried, and sentenced to be reprimanded by Washington. His proud mind could not endure this disgrace, and he resolved on revenge.

**11. Takes Command of West Point.**—He had still so much influence with Washington as to get the command of West Point, the works that had been built to guard the Highlands on the Hudson. He shortly opened a correspondence with Clinton, at New York, to surrender this post to the British; and Major André, a young English officer, under the name of John Anderson, was sent up the river to complete the arrangements with Arnold.

**12. Andre captured—Arnold escapes.**—They met near Haverstraw, September 22, and settled every thing. On his way back, by land, to New York, André was arrested by three American militia-men, and the plans of West Point were found concealed in his boots. He was taken to the nearest American post, and the commander thoughtlessly wrote to Arnold, informing him that Anderson was taken. Arnold at once escaped on his barge to the

9. What help arrived in July? Of how much service did it prove?

10. What was the great event of 1780? Give some account of his life at Philadelphia. Why was he removed from his command? State the result.

11. What new appointment did he receive? What use did he make of this? What is said of André?

Vulture, the British ship that had brought André up the river, and so reached New York in safety.

13. **Execution of Andre.**—André was taken to Tappan—opposite to Tarrytown—where he was tried by court-martial as a spy. On the trial he made a frank statement of the whole affair, and was condemned to death. He was executed October 2, 1780. His fate excited great pity, but he died justly, according to the laws of war. Arnold received from the British the rank of brigadier general and £10,000.

### 1781.

1. **Mutiny at Morristown.**—A large part of the northern troops were again at Morristown during the winter of 1780-'81. They had more food, but they were in great want of pay and clothing. Some 1300 troops of the Pennsylvania line thought their time of service was up, left the camp on January 1, and began their march to Philadelphia to demand redress from Congress. On their way, spies from Clinton met them, with persuasions to join the British service. But though angry with Congress, they were still American patriots, and the agents were promptly seized and handed over to General Wayne.

2. **The Mutiny quieted.**—A committee from Congress met these troops at Princeton, and yielded to their demands. This trouble was no sooner settled than the troops at Pompton, New Jersey, mutinied. But Washington promptly took the business in hand, and put the mutineers down by force. Congress now made extraordinary exertions to relieve the sufferings of the army, and in part succeeded. Being without money or credit, it was forced to plead with the States for help, but they

---

12. Where did he and Arnold meet? What happened to André? What became of Arnold?

13. Give the story of André's trial and death. How was his death regarded? How was Arnold rewarded?

1. What was the condition of the troops at Morristown? To what did this lead? What occurred on their march?

were also very poor. It was at this time that Robert Morris, a Philadelphia merchant, stepped in, and by his efforts greatly helped to save the American cause from ruin.

3. **Events in the South—Arnold ravages Virginia.**—The traitor Arnold began the military movements of the year in January by leading an expedition to the James River, and plundering and burning Richmond. The militia assembled, and he fell back to Portsmouth. There was a plan laid to catch the traitor, by means of the French fleet on one side, and Lafayette with the troops on the other; but it failed. A British fleet defeated the French admiral off the Chesapeake, and the British, under General Philips, intrenched themselves at Portsmouth.

4. **Cornwallis in North Carolina.**—About the same time Cornwallis moved into North Carolina. He sent Tarleton to get between Greene and Morgan, whose divisions were separated. This fiery officer struck Morgan at the Cowpens, January 17, and was sweeping every thing before him, when Morgan turned on him, and defeated him with great loss.

5. **Cornwallis pursues Morgan.**—Cornwallis, on hearing of Tarleton's defeat, pushed on to cut off Morgan's retreat into Virginia, but reached the Catawba a few hours after Morgan had crossed. The rain swelled the river, and Cornwallis could not follow for several days. Morgan, with Cornwallis behind him, pressed for the Yadkin, where he was joined by Greene, who took command.

6. **Greene's Retreat.**—At that river the rain again saved Morgan, as at the Catawba. Every nerve was now strained by both armies for the Dan. Greene, with many of his men tracking the ground with their shoeless feet, reached the river and crossed it just as Cornwallis

---

2. How was the mutiny quieted? What occurred elsewhere? What good resulted to the army generally? What was the condition of Congress?

3. How was the year begun? What plan was laid, and with what success? Why did it fail?

4. Where and when did Cornwallis move? What about Tarleton? How did he lose the battle of the Cowpens?

5. How did this affect Cornwallis? Why did he not catch Morgan?

came in sight. The British general now gave up the pursuit, and retired slowly south. Greene received great praise for his skillful retreat.

7. **Battle of Guilford Court-house.**—No sooner had Cornwallis retired than Greene, being re-enforced, followed him to watch his motions. On the 15th of March Cornwallis attacked him at Guilford Court-house, and drove him for several miles. Greene fought so well that Cornwallis, notwithstanding his victory, thought it wise to fall back to Wilmington, near the sea-coast.

8. **Hobkirk's Hill.**—Greene now went into South Carolina, to watch the British forces there, under Lord Rawdon. At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, Greene was defeated by Rawdon, April 24, after a severe battle. Like that of Guilford Court-house, the victory was of no use to the British. They suffered so much, and Greene was so active after the battle, that Rawdon was forced to retreat to the neighborhood of Charleston.

9. **South Carolina recovered.**—The partisan officers, Marion, Lee, and Pickens, were in the mean time so active that, by the month of June, only three posts were held by the British in South Carolina—Charleston, Nelson's Ferry, and Ninety-six, near the Saluda River. Greene tried to take the latter by assault, on June 18, but was repulsed with severe loss. On June 5, Augusta, Georgia, was surrendered to Lee and Pickens.

10. **British driven toward Charleston.**—Stewart, who succeeded Rawdon in South Carolina, was attacked by Greene, September 8, at Eutaw Springs. The battle at first was in favor of the Americans, but the British rallied, and Greene fell back in good order. In the night

---

6. Who now took command of the Americans? Describe the retreat of Greene.

7. What movements followed? Give the battle of March 15. Its result.

8. Where did Greene now go, and for what? State the battle that followed, and its result. See, for these movements, Map, page 109.

9. By whom were the British harassed? What is a partisan officer? A partisan officer is one who commands a body of light troops which are not closely connected with the army, and which often act independently. What was gained from the British?

Stewart was followed by Greene as far as Monk's Corner, some thirty miles north of Charleston.

**11. Cornwallis in Virginia.**—Cornwallis, whom we left at Wilmington, moved north from that place, and entered Petersburg, Virginia, on the 20th of May. It will be remembered that General Philips occupied Portsmouth after Arnold was on the Chesapeake. Philips joined Cornwallis, and the latter, under orders from Clinton, encamped at Yorktown, at the mouth of York River, and threw up fortifications.

**12. He is entrapped at Yorktown.**—Washington now saw that the time had arrived for a decisive movement. The French army numbered 7000 men; the American troops had been re-enforced; there was a powerful French fleet, and a plan was agreed on to blockade the Chesapeake with the fleet, while the French and American allied army attacked Cornwallis from the land side. Washington, who had been threatening New York, quietly moved his troops into New Jersey, and so deceived Clinton that he was far on his way to Virginia before the British general suspected his designs.

**13. Arnold burns New London.**—It was too late to stop him, and Clinton, thinking to draw him back, sent a powerful force, under Arnold, to attack New London. Fort Griswold was taken by assault, and a number of the garrison shamefully massacred after surrender. The town also was burned, together with the shipping. It did not for one moment delay Washington's march, however; and the New England militia soon compelled Arnold to return to New York.

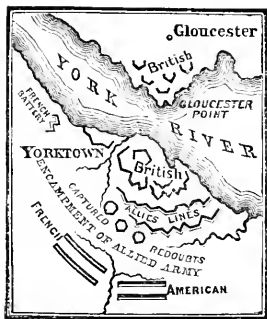
**14. Surrender of Yorktown.**—On September 28 the al-

10. What is said of the battle of September 8? Where were the British compelled to go?

11. What were Cornwallis's movements? Who was at Portsmouth? Why did Cornwallis go to Yorktown?

12. How did Washington regard this movement? What plan was laid? How did Washington deceive Clinton?

13. What steps did Clinton take to draw Washington back? How far were they successful? What was done by Arnold?



SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

lied army of 16,000 men was in front of Yorktown, the French under the command of Count Rochambeau (*ro-sham-bo'*). The French fleet, under Admiral De Grasse, blocked up the Chesapeake. The siege went on with very great rapidity; intrenchment after intrenchment was taken by the allies; and on the 19th of October Cornwallis surrendered his army, of nearly 7000

men, prisoners of war. The shipping and naval stores, with 1500 seamen, were given to the French admiral.

15. **Effect of the Surrender.**—The news of this surrender filled the hearts of the American patriots everywhere with joy. It was felt that the contest was at an end. A second English army, with all its appointments, had fallen into their hands. But the English king, George III., and his Parliament did not think so, and in November they talked about continuing the war.

### 1782-'83.

1. **The War ended—Treaty of Peace.**—Before spring opened, public opinion in England changed. In March Parliament voted to end the war; and on the 30th of November, 1782, a preliminary treaty of peace was signed by the American commissioners at Paris. The final treaty of peace was signed at the same place on September 3, 1783.

2. **Distressing State of the Army.**—The bulk of the American army was in camp at Newburg, on the Hud-

14. What was the state of things at Yorktown in September? State what is said of the siege, and the surrender.

15. What was the effect produced on the Americans by the surrender? What on the English Government?

1. What change took place in the spring of 1782? State the different important events that followed.

son, in the years 1782 and 1783. The officers and soldiers had great wrongs, which they thought ought to be righted. They had suffered terribly during the war. They had received no pay except in worthless bills, and they were going back to their homes poor, and without the means of obtaining a livelihood. Serious difficulty was apprehended from the excited state of the army.

3. **They obtain some Redress.**—Washington used his great influence to quiet the feelings of the troops, on the one hand. At the same time he was able to persuade Congress to grant five years' pay to the officers in one sum, instead of half-pay for life, and four months' pay to the privates. This settlement was accepted by the army.

4. **Terms of the Treaty of Peace.**—By the terms of the treaty of Paris the independence of the United States was acknowledged; and the boundaries of her territory were, westward by the Mississippi, south by Florida, now given to Spain, and north by the great lakes and the provinces. All west of the Mississippi was understood to belong to Spain.

5. **Concluding Events.**—On the 3d of November the army was disbanded. Not until the 25th did the English evacuate New York, and, on the 2d of December, Washington, in that city, bade farewell to his officers. He then went to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, and resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States. In a few days he retired to his estate at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, which he had never once visited from the beginning of the war.

#### GOVERNMENT FROM 1781 TO 1789.

1. **Articles of Confederation.**—When Congress adopted the Declaration of Independence, in 1776, it ordered a

2. What was the state of things at Newburg in 1782-'83?
3. Who used his influence to quiet matters? What settlement was agreed on?
4. When was the treaty of peace concluded? What were its terms?
5. When was the army disbanded? When did the last English troops leave New York? What is said of Washington?

committee to prepare Articles of Confederation. These were designed to give the United States a national form of government, and were adopted by Congress in 1777. They were then sent to the States for their approval. Four years passed before this was obtained, and in 1781 they were at last ratified by the States.

2. **Powers of Congress during the War.**—Till the year 1781, during almost the entire war, there was no Constitution or guaranteed form of government. Each State was entirely independent. Congress did what it could, and worked with great activity, but it had no powers granted by the States to enforce its orders. The States obeyed or not, just as they saw fit, and this was the cause of much of the distress that the army suffered.

3. **Weakness of the new Government.**—The Articles of Confederation, when adopted, did not greatly improve matters. The public creditors remained unpaid, and the States treated the orders of Congress with indifference. When the Government attempted to raise money by taxation, the people resisted. In Massachusetts, in the year 1786, a rebellion, led by Daniel Shays, broke out, and was only put down by an armed force.

4. **The Constitution adopted.**—It was plain that a stronger government was necessary. Accordingly, in May, 1787, a convention of delegates met at Philadelphia to revise the Articles. They soon saw that it would be better to frame a new Constitution; and, after four months' deliberation, they recommended the present Constitution of the United States for adoption by the States.

5. **Its Ratification by the States.**—It had been agreed in convention that the Constitution should go into opera-

---

1. What important measure was adopted by Congress in 1777? What was the object of these Articles? When were they ratified by the States?

2. What is said of the government till 1781? What is said of Congress and the States? What did this state of things produce?

3. How did the Government succeed under the Articles? What happened in Massachusetts?

4. What was soon seen? What occurred in May, 1787? What was the result of these deliberations?



tion when nine States had ratified it. Eleven States gave their assent to it before the end of 1788; North Carolina did not until 1789, and Rhode Island not until 1790.

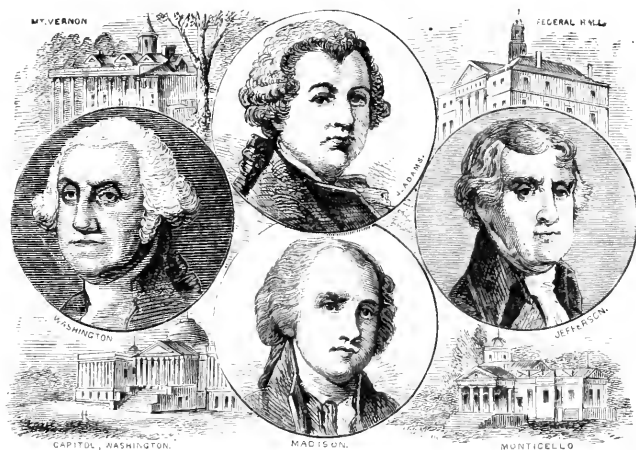
6. **First Election of President.**—The old Continental Congress, in 1788, appointed the first Wednesday of January, 1789, as the day for the choice of presidential electors, and March 4, 1789, for the first meeting of the new Government, in the city of New York. In the election, George Washington was unanimously chosen President, and John Adams, of Massachusetts, Vice-President.

---

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. Give an account of some of the remote causes of the Revolution.
  2. What was the immediate cause?
  3. Why did the colonies oppose this, and what arguments did they use?
  4. What measures greatly increased the quarrel? Describe these.
  5. What two colonies were most active in their opposition?
  6. Give a few instances of this activity.
  7. What effect did the opposition of the colonists have on England?
  8. What right did the English Government still claim?
  9. What occurred in Boston in 1770? What led to this?
  10. How did England attempt to reconcile the colonies to taxation?
  11. How far was this successful?
  12. Give an account of the famous proceedings at Boston in 1773.
  13. In what way was Boston punished for this?
  14. Show the feeling of the other colonies in regard to this severity.
  15. What great movement was made in October, 1774?
  16. What preparations were made by both sides this year?
  17. Who were the minute-men?
  18. Where and how was the first blood shed?
  19. Describe the Lexington fight till its close.
  20. What was the result of the battle of Lexington?
  21. What led to the battle of Bunker Hill? Describe the battle.
  22. When and where did the second Continental Congress meet?
  23. Who was appointed commander-in-chief?
  24. For what were the colonies fighting during 1775?
  25. What other military events were there in 1775?
  26. State briefly the result of the Canada expedition.
  27. Why was this undertaken?
  28. Where were military operations carried on during 1776?
  29. With what important events did the year begin and end?
  30. Sketch the movements of both armies from August until December.
  31. What great measure was passed by Congress in July?
- 
5. What important agreement was made in convention? When was it ratified, and by what number of States? When did the others give their assent?
  6. What body determined when and where the new Government should begin? Who were elected President and Vice-president?

32. Give the names of the members of the committee that prepared this.
33. What attempts were made by England to conciliate the colonies?
34. To whom did the Americans turn for help?
35. Where were military operations carried on during 1777?
36. What were the objects of these two lines of operations?
37. Give the principal events that occurred on Howe's march to Philadelphia.
38. Why was Philadelphia so important?
39. Name the principal events in Burgoyne's operations.
40. Which of these directly led to his destruction?
41. Describe Burgoyne's movements during the last month.
42. What was the effect of the surrender?
43. Where was the American army during the winter, and what was its condition? How did this compare with that of the British?
44. What was the first great event of the year 1778?
45. To what important military event in America did this lead?
46. What can you tell about the battle of Monmouth?
47. Where was the scene of military operations till December, 1778?
48. To what point was the principal seat of war then changed?
49. What generals conducted operations during 1778?
50. What was the state of military affairs at the end of the year?
51. Where was the scene of military operations during 1779?
52. Mention the chief events in the South this year.
53. Give the leading incidents at the North.
54. Name some of the generals engaged during 1779.
55. What was the scene of military operations during 1780?
56. Give the principal events at the South.
57. Who were the tories?
58. What famous event took place at the North in 1780?
59. Give an account of this.
60. Where did we hear of Arnold previously in this history?
61. Where was the American army in the North during the winter?
62. With what event did the year open?
63. How did this end, and what good resulted to the army?
64. Where was the scene of military operations during 1781?
65. Name the principal events of the year in the South.
66. Where did the British take post early in the year?
67. Sketch the movements of the British south of Virginia.
68. Give an account of Greene's celebrated retreat.
69. What was the general result of the war in the South in June?
70. Name some celebrated partisan officers there. Define this term.
71. Describe the movements of Cornwallis.
72. Where did he at last take up a position, and why?
73. Describe the plans of Washington at this time.
74. What is said of Clinton at New York?
75. What effect was produced by the surrender of Cornwallis.
76. Give the terms of the treaty of peace.
77. What dangerous movement occurred in the army before the treaty?
78. How was the difficulty met and remedied?
79. What was the condition of the finances during the war?
80. Who was King of England during the Revolution?
81. Under what form of government were the United States till 1781?
82. What were then adopted? Give their history.
83. How did this form of government succeed?
84. Give the history of the adoption of the Constitution.
85. What arrangements were made to start the new Government?



## CHAPTER VII.

### THE UNITED STATES UNDER THE CONSTITUTION.

#### PART I.—FROM 1789 TO 1817.

##### ADMINISTRATION OF GEORGE WASHINGTON—THE FIRST PRESIDENT.

1789-1797.

1. **Commencement of the new Government.**—On the 3d of March, 1789, the great Continental Congress of the Revolution went quietly out of existence. From May, 1775, until that time, a period of fourteen years, it had been in constant session, principally at Philadelphia. The new Government had been ordered to begin on March 4, but the members of Congress arrived so slowly that Washington was not inaugurated until April 30. The ceremony took place on the balcony of Federal Hall, in the city of New York, the first capital.

1. What is said of the old Continental Congress? When and by what was it succeeded? What is said of the inauguration?

2. **Appointment of the Cabinet.**—Congress at once created three executive departments in the Government. Washington chose Thomas Jefferson as the head of the Department of State; Alexander Hamilton, of the Treasury; and General Knox, of the War Department. These three heads, called secretaries, were Washington's advisers, or Cabinet officers.

3. **Hamilton's Financial Measures.**—The heaviest labor fell on Hamilton. The finances of the country were in the greatest disorder. Public credit was well-nigh gone, and the States were either unable or unwilling to pay the public creditors. Hamilton succeeded in getting Congress, in 1790, to adopt his plan. The national debt was to be paid in full, and the nation agreed to assume the debts of the States.

4. **New Capital—United States Bank.**—The same year the seat of government was changed from New York to Philadelphia, to remain there until the year 1800. It was then to be changed to its present place, on the banks of the Potomac. In 1791 the Bank of the United States was chartered by Congress for twenty years.

5. **Vermont admitted.**—Vermont, for a long time claimed by New York as part of her territory, was admitted first into the Union—thus making the fourteenth State. She applied for admission during the war, but New York then opposed it, on the ground that Vermont was part of New York territory. Two other States were admitted during Washington's administration—Kentucky, in 1792, and Tennessee, in 1796.

6. **Indian War.**—The Indians north of the Ohio had become very troublesome. In the year 1790 General Harmar was sent against them, but was defeated with con-

---

2. What departments were created by Congress? Who were chosen as secretaries? What did they form?

3. What is said of Hamilton's labors? How did he succeed?

4. What arrangements were made about the change of the capital? What was formed in 1791?

5. What State was the first admitted? Why was she refused admission previously? What other States were admitted, and when?

siderable loss. Next year General St. Clair was surprised in his camp, near the Miami River, and compelled to retreat. General Wayne was next sent to the Indian country, and in the battle of the Maumee, August, 1794, defeated the savages with great slaughter. The Indians were compelled to cede, by treaty, more than 25,000 square miles in the present State of Ohio.

7. **Washington re-elected—M. Genet.**—The presidential election took place in the fall of 1792. Washington was again chosen President, and Adams Vice-president. In the year 1793 the French republican Government sent out M. Genet (*zhā-nū'*) as ambassador to the United States. France was then at war with England, and Genet began to fit out privateers from American ports to capture British ships.

8. **Genet recalled by France.**—Washington was greatly displeased with Genet, because he was anxious that the country should not be involved in a war with England. Genet behaved very defiantly, relying on the support of a large party in the United States who took sides with France. In the end Washington demanded the Frenchman's recall by his Government, which was promptly complied with, in 1794. This affair produced much excitement throughout the United States.

9. **The Whisky Rebellion.**—It was partly owing to the unsettled state of feeling produced by Genet's quarrel that the "Whisky Rebellion" broke out, in the year 1794. One of Hamilton's plans of raising revenue was by a tax on distilled spirits. The men of Western Pennsylvania refused to pay the tax, and took up arms. Washington sent an armed force among them, and they at once submitted.

6. Where and when did an Indian war break out? What two generals failed? What one was successful? Give an account of this.

7. What is said of the election of 1792? What difficulty began in 1793?

8. How did Washington meet this? Was his conduct unanimously approved? How did the affair end?

9. What took place in Pennsylvania? How was it ended?

**10. Treaty with England.**—Serious misunderstanding had arisen with England, chiefly about giving up some of the Western posts. Accordingly John Jay was sent to England, and concluded a treaty in 1794, which settled this and other points in dispute. The friends of France who had taken part with Genet, and who hated England, became still more bitter when the news of the treaty was made public. They burned Jay in effigy, and in the newspapers severely criticised the conduct of Washington. The treaty, however, was ratified by the United States Government.

**11. John Adams chosen President.**—When the time for election of President drew near, Washington, in a farewell address to the people of the United States, said that he would not be a candidate. A very bitter and exciting canvass followed—John Adams being nominated by one party, and Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, by the other. The former received a majority of electoral votes, and Jefferson, receiving the next lower number of votes, became Vice-president. This was the method of choosing that officer in the early history of the Government.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN ADAMS—THE SECOND PRESIDENT.

1797-1801.

**12. Washington goes to Mount Vernon.**—Washington was present at the inauguration of President Adams, in Philadelphia, March 4, 1797. He was received on that occasion by the people with great honor. Soon after, he retired to Mount Vernon—"FIRST IN WAR, FIRST IN PEACE, AND FIRST IN THE HEARTS OF HIS COUNTRYMEN."

**13. Troubles with France.**—The treaty between England and the United States displeased France so much

10. What fresh trouble had been brewing? How was it settled? How did a large part of the people look on this, and how did they show their feelings?

11. What is said of Washington's decision? What is said of the election?

12. What is stated about Washington's leaving the Presidency?

that she ordered Mr. Pinckney, the American Minister at Paris, to leave the country. The President called a meeting of Congress, warlike preparations were ordered, and Washington was made commander-in-chief. There was some fighting at sea, but before hostilities went farther, Napoleon Bonaparte, first consul of France, signed a treaty of peace, in the year 1800.

**14. Death of Washington.**—Meanwhile Washington died at his home in Mount Vernon, after a short illness, December 14, 1799. All parties united in paying the highest honors to his memory, and he was mourned throughout the nation as THE FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY. In Europe the most sincere tributes were awarded to the nobleness, the purity, and the grandeur of his character.

**15. Jefferson chosen President.**—The quarrel between the two great political parties—the Federalists and Republicans—grew more and more bitter as the presidential election approached. Adams was renominated by the former; Jefferson was the candidate of the latter. The Republicans triumphed. Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, was chosen President, and Aaron Burr, of New York, Vice-president.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF THOMAS JEFFERSON—THE THIRD PRESIDENT.

1801-1809.

**16. Jefferson and the Mississippi.**—The capital had been changed in the year 1800 to the city of Washington, according to act of Congress. Jefferson was inaugurated here on the 4th of March, 1801. In 1802 Ohio was admitted into the Union, as the seventeenth State. The greatest event of his administration, certainly the one

---

13. How did France look on the treaty with England? To what did this feeling lead? How was the difficulty settled?

14. What sudden event occurred about this time? What remarks are made?

15. What two political parties divided the country? To which of these did Adams belong? Jefferson? What is said of the election?

that he himself was most proud of, was the purchase of the territory of Louisiana from France. His far-seeing mind led him to perceive that whatever power held the mouth of the river must control the trade of the entire Mississippi Valley. He therefore tried to persuade Bonaparte to sell New Orleans to the United States. This place, along with Louisiana, had been receded to France by Spain.

17. **Louisiana purchased.**—To Jefferson's great delight, Bonaparte, who needed money, offered to sell not only New Orleans, but the whole of Louisiana. The offer was accepted, and more than 1,000,000 square miles of territory became the property of the United States, in 1803, for \$15,000,000. Congress divided it into two territories: one, covering what is now the State of Louisiana, was named the Territory of New Orleans; the other, embracing the remainder, was called the District of Louisiana.

18. **War with the Barbary Powers.**—In 1803 Commodore Preble was sent to the Mediterranean to punish the Barbary pirates for their long-continued ill-treatment of American vessels in that sea. One of his ships, the frigate Philadelphia, stranded in the harbor of Tripoli, and her crew were made slaves by the Tripolitans.

19. **Decatur's brilliant Exploit.**—The pirates did not long keep their prize. In February, 1804, Lieutenant Decatur, in a small schooner, with a picked crew, ran alongside of the Philadelphia, in the harbor of Tripoli, killed or drove into the sea the Tripolitan crew, and set fire to the vessel. He escaped without the loss of a man.

20. **Eaton's romantic Expedition.**—Hamet, the elder brother of the Bey of Tripoli, had been driven from the throne. Eaton, the American consul at Tunis, arranged

---

16. To what place, and when, was the capital changed? What was the greatest event of his administration? What is said of this?

17. What fortunate offer was made? How was it received? What did Congress do with the territory?

18. What war sprang up in 1803? What happened to one of the ships?

19. What brilliant exploit revenged this? Describe it.



with him an expedition to capture Tripoli. On their way they captured Derne, a Tripolitan city, and were advancing on Tripoli itself, when they were stopped by the news that the Bey had already made peace with the American Minister, Mr. Lear, in 1805.

**21. Death of Hamilton.**—In July, 1804, Alexander Hamilton, Washington's Secretary of the Treasury, was shot in a duel by Aaron Burr, the Vice-president. The duel grew out of a political quarrel, and created intense excitement throughout the country. It ruined Burr in the good opinion of the people, who thought that he forced the quarrel to kill Hamilton. Finding his political character gone, he became mixed up in a treasonable attempt to found an empire south-west of the Alleghanies. For this he was arrested and tried, but was acquitted for want of evidence. He never afterward appeared in public life. Jefferson was re-elected President in Nov., 1804.

**22. Injury to American Commerce.**—France and England were still at war. The latter, who claimed to be "mistress of the seas," in the year 1806, declared the French coast in a state of blockade. Napoleon, in retaliation, declared the British Island blockaded. This was a serious blow to American commerce, for her shipping was busy carrying goods to both countries.

**23. English Oppression—The Right of Search.**—A most serious grievance was "the right of search" which England exercised. It was an insult to American national honor. Her ships of war stopped our merchant vessels, and picked out from their crews whatever seamen they wanted, under the claim that the men were deserters from the English service. Even American vessels of war were stopped on the high seas, and searched under this

---

20. Who was Hamet? Who took up his cause? What romantic expedition was arranged? How did it succeed? How was the war ended, and when?

21. What happened in July, 1804? What occasioned the duel? What did the people generally believe? What became of Burr?

22. What was the state of affairs between England and France? What measures did they adopt? How did this affect the United States?

plea. On the 22d of June, 1807, the British ship *Leopard* fired into the frigate *Chesapeake* because she had refused to give up four seamen claimed as British deserters; yet three of these men were American citizens.

24. **Ruin of American Commerce.**—An additional grievance came in the shape of “Orders in Council,” which forbade any nation to trade with France and her allies. This was followed by a decree from Bonaparte forbidding all trade with England and her colonies. These measures gave another severe blow to the foreign commerce of the United States. If her vessels escaped the cruisers of one nation, they were almost certain to be captured by those of the other.

25. **Congress retaliates.**—Congress determined to retaliate, and in December, 1807, passed an embargo prohibiting all American vessels from leaving the United States, thus stopping all trade with France and England. This measure proved so ruinous to American merchants, that they petitioned for its removal, and it was repealed on the 1st of March, 1809. Jefferson declined a re-election. James Madison, of Virginia, was elected President, and George Clinton, of New York, was chosen Vice-president.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MADISON—THE FOURTH PRESIDENT.

1809-1817.

26. **English Arrogance rebuked.**—In 1810 the French abolished the decrees which had proved so hurtful to the United States, but the English continued to enforce theirs with even increased energy. One of their war vessels, the *Little Belt*, while cruising off the American

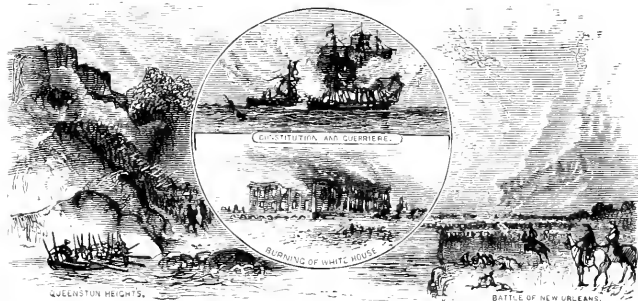
23. What serious insult to American honor is mentioned? What was the right of search? To what extent did they go? Mention an instance.

24. What further injuries came to American commerce? Why did these measures work so much injury?

25. What did Congress do about all this? How did this measure operate? Who was chosen President?

coast, was hailed by the frigate *President*. She haughtily answered by a shot that struck the mainmast of the frigate. The *President* returned the fire so spiritedly that in twenty minutes the *Little Belt* had thirty-two of her crew killed or wounded.

**27. Indian War—Battle of Tippecanoe.**—The Indians, in the mean time, were troublesome on the north-west frontier, and it was thought that the British were encouraging them. Tecumtha, a very brave and wily Shawnee chief, led the various tribes. General Harrison, governor of Indiana Territory, at the head of a large force, marched against them, and defeated them on the battle-field of Tippecanoe. This battle broke up the confederacy that had been planned by Tecumtha, and put a sudden end to the danger of an Indian war.



1812.

**28. War proclaimed with England.**—For a series of years England had oppressed American commerce. She had, besides, haughtily seized American seamen from the decks of American vessels, claiming them as deserters from her flag. It was no longer to be borne, and on

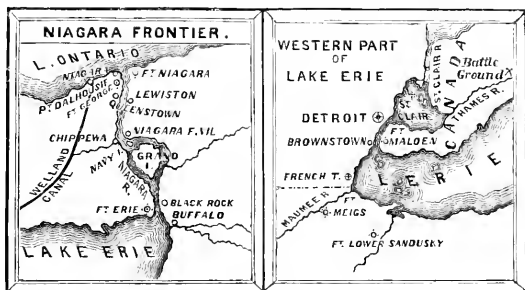
26. How did the French and English governments behave? How was British arrogance rebuked on the ocean?

27. Where did Indian hostilities break out? Who was Tecumtha? How was the war ended?



the 19th of June, 1812, President Madison published a proclamation of war against England.

**29. Invasion of Canada.**—Hostilities began with the invasion of Canada by Governor Hull, of Michigan Territory. On the 12th of July he crossed the river from the fort at Detroit, to attack the British post at Malden. While he was idling away precious time in camp at Sandwich, a small British force appeared at Fort Mackinaw, July 17, and captured it without resistance.



**30. Surrender of Detroit.**—Hull's delay allowed the British and Indians under Brock and the chief Tecumtha to collect in force, and he returned rapidly to Detroit, followed by the British. On the first demand to surrender, Hull hung out a white flag, and Detroit, with its garrison, and the whole of Michigan Territory, fell into General Brock's hands, August 16. Hull was cashiered for his disgraceful and cowardly conduct, and but for his services in the Revolutionary War he would have been shot.

**31. The Battle of Queenston Heights.**—A body of New York militia encamped at Lewiston, on the Niagara, crossed the river on the 13th of October, and attacked

28. When was war proclaimed? State what led to this.

29. How did hostilities begin? Describe Hull's first movements. What place was captured? This is on the straits between Lake Huron and Superior.

30. What was the effect of Hull's conduct? What disgrace followed? How did the Government punish Hull?

the British batteries on Queenston Heights. At first they were successful. General Brock was killed, and the enemy were driven back; but the British were afterward re-enforced, and nearly all the Americans were either killed, wounded, or taken prisoners. The day was lost, because their comrades at Lewiston would not cross over in sufficient numbers to their help. Colonel, afterward General, Scott first distinguished himself in this battle.

**32. Naval Operations.**—The misfortunes of the army during the year 1812 produced great mortification among those who favored the war. At sea the American navy redeemed the honor of our arms. In July, the *ESSEX*, Captain Porter, captured the *ALERT*. In August, the *GUERRIERE*, British frigate, was captured by the frigate *CONSTITUTION*, Captain Isaac Hull, after a fierce fight. In October, the *WASP*, Captain Jones, captured the *FROLIC*. In the same month, the *UNITED STATES*, Commodore Decatur, captured the *MACEDONIAN*. In December, the *CONSTITUTION*, Commodore Bainbridge, captured the *JAVA*.

**33. American Rejoicings.**—These victories over the “mistress of the seas,” as England was styled, created great rejoicing among the American people, particularly the capture of the *Guerriere* by the *Constitution*. This was the first victory gained over an English frigate by another frigate in fifty years. The American privateers, also, were very active, and captured during the year 300 British merchant-vessels, many of which had valuable cargoes.

**34. Popular Feeling about the War.**—A large part of the people were opposed to the war. It was very unpopular in the Eastern States, but throughout the country a sufficient majority were in favor of it to re-elect Madison president for a second term, in the fall of 1812.

---

31. What movement was made on the New York frontier in October? Describe the battle. Why did it result so unfortunately?

32. What is said of the events on land and at sea? Name the victories at sea.

33. How did the Americans regard these successes, and why? In what way was British commerce harassed?

34. How was the war regarded? Which party had the majority? How shown?

## 1813.

**35. Extensive Operations.**—The operations on land were commenced this year on a much larger scale. Three armies were formed. General Harrison commanded the ARMY OF THE WEST, near the head of Lake Erie; General Dearborn the ARMY OF THE CENTRE, on the Niagara frontier; General Hampton the ARMY OF THE NORTH, near Lake Champlain.

**36. The Army of the West.**—The work assigned to Harrison was the recovery of Michigan Territory. General Winchester, with a part of the Army of the West, moved to Frenchtown, on the River Raisin, and attacked and dispersed a small British force. While lying carelessly encamped, he was attacked by 1500 British and Indians, under General Proctor, and, after a bloody fight, was forced to surrender, January 22.

**37. Harrison at Fort Meigs.**—Harrison, hearing of this disaster, fortified himself at the rapids of the Maumee, and called the works Fort Meigs (*megs*). Proctor laid siege to the fort May 1, but General Clay, with 1200 Kentuckians, came to the relief of Harrison, and Proctor, after a sharp engagement, abandoned the siege. Proctor next attacked Fort Stevenson, at Lower Sandusky, commanded by Colonel Croghan (*cróg-an*), a young man of twenty-one years of age, but was beaten back, August 2, with severe loss. The same night he returned to Malden.

**38. Perry's Victory.**—The theatre of war now changed to Lake Erie. There were two small fleets on its waters: one, the British, commanded by Commodore Barclay; the other, American, by Commodore Perry. On the 10th of September a severe battle of three hours was fought at

35. What preparations were made in 1813? Give the armies, their positions, and the generals commanding.

36. What was Harrison to attempt? With what unfortunate event did the campaign begin?

37. What did this compel Harrison to do? What occurred there? What took place at Lower Sandusky? Give the dates.

the western end of the lake, and Perry came off victorious. He immediately wrote to General Harrison, in these words: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours."

**39. Battle of the Thames.**—Perry's vessels conveyed Harrison's army across the lake to Canada. Proctor at once abandoned Malden, and retreated, with Tecumtha, northward. Harrison pursued, and came up with them, October 5, at the River Thames. After a short but severe battle, Tecumtha was killed, and Proctor defeated, and was only saved from capture by the fleetness of his horse. The battle of the Thames recovered Michigan Territory, which was lost by the base surrender of Hull, and the north-western frontier was relieved from the fear of invasion.

**40. Capture of Toronto.**—In April, General Dearborn, with 1700 men, crossed Lake Ontario to attack York, now Toronto, the capital of Upper Canada. In the assault, General Pike, who led the advance, was killed, with nearly two hundred of his men, by the explosion of a magazine. The place, however, with a large amount of stores, was captured by the Americans.

**41. Americans take Fort George.**—Leaving York, the troops sailed to attack Fort George, on the Niagara. The British, on their approach, blew up their magazines, abandoned the fort, and retreated to the head of the lake. The Americans followed, but were attacked at midnight, June 6, and fell back to Fort George.

**42. Sackett's Harbor—Fort George.**—In the absence of Dearborn at Fort George, the British, under Prevost, attacked Sackett's Harbor, but were so vigorously received by the militia that they left precipitately. They were more fortunate at Fort George, where they surprised a detachment of 600 men belonging to the garrison. Gen-

---

38. To what place did the contest change? Why? What occurred here?

39. To what did this battle lead? Whom did Harrison follow? What occurred? What was the great result of the battle?

40. What place was attacked in April, and by whom? With what result?

41. To what point did they next go? What occurred there?



eral Dearborn was recalled, for his want of success, and General Wilkinson was appointed to succeed him.

43. **Expedition against Montreal.**—Wilkinson moved against Montreal, and Hampton, with a part of the Army of the North, was ordered to join him on the St. Lawrence. On the 11th of November the Army of the Centre fought the undecisive battle of Chrysler's Farm. Wilkinson then moved to St. Regis, where he waited for Hamp-

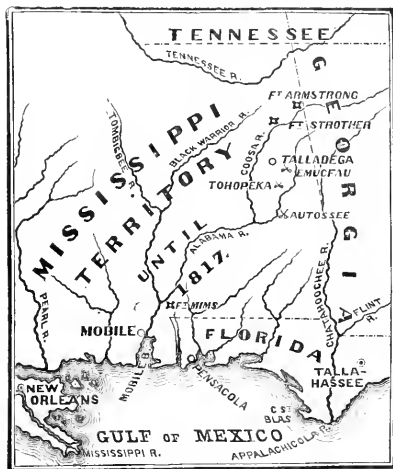
ton. That general failed to unite with him, and the expedition was abandoned.

44. **Creek Indian War.**—Tecumtha, in the spring of 1813, visited the Indians in the south-west, and stirred them to war. In August the Creeks attacked and took Fort Mims, on the Alabama River, slaughtering nearly 400 settlers who had gone thither for protection.

Generals Jackson and

Coffee were sent against the Indians, and, after some minor engagements, defeated 1000 of them at Tohopeka, on the Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa River. Over 600 warriors were slain, and 250 women and children were captured. This ended the Creek War, March 27, 1814.

45. **Naval Events.**—The naval engagements at sea began with the capture of the British *PEACOCK* by the



SEAT OF THE CREEK WAR.

42. Give the British movements elsewhere. Who succeeded General Dearborn, and why?

43. What was Wilkinson's first movement, and what was the plan? What occurred on the river? What ended the expedition?

44. Who was Tecumtha? See 1812. What were his movements and success? Who were sent against the Indians? How did they succeed?

**HORNET**, Captain Lawrence, at the mouth of the Demerara River, South America, February 25. The action lasted fifteen minutes, and the Peacock sank shortly afterward.

46. **The Shannon and the Chesapeake.**—Captain Lawrence was promoted to the command of the **CHESAPEAKE**, refitting in Boston Harbor. The British ship **SHANNON**, in admirable condition, was cruising outside with a finely-trained crew; and the captain sent a challenge to Lawrence to fight the Chesapeake. Lawrence was ill prepared to fight, for his crew was new; but he sailed out promptly, and met the Shannon on the 1st of June. The battle was terrible, and was over in fifteen minutes. Lawrence was carried below mortally wounded, crying, "Don't give up the ship," and 146 of his crew were either killed or wounded when the Chesapeake surrendered.

47. **Other Naval Battles.**—In August, the American vessel **ARGUS** was captured by the **PELICAN** while cruising in the British Channel. In September, the **ENTERPRISE**, Captain Burrows, captured the British brig **BOXER** off the coast of Maine. Both captains were killed in this action.

### 1814-'15.

48. **Successes at Fort Erie and Chippewa.**—In the beginning of May, General Brown, with 2000 Americans, moved from Sackett's Harbor to the Niagara River. Shortly after he arrived, his force was increased to 5000 men. He then crossed the river, and Fort Erie surrendered to him without bloodshed, July 3. The Americans then pushed forward and attacked the British at Chippewa, fifteen miles north, near the river-bank, July 5, where the enemy were defeated, with the loss of 500 men.

49. **Battle of Lundy's Lane.**—On the 25th, the British being re-enforced and led by General Drummond, ad-

45. What was the first naval event?

46. What led to the battle between the Shannon and the Chesapeake? What was the condition of the two vessels and their crews? Describe the engagement.

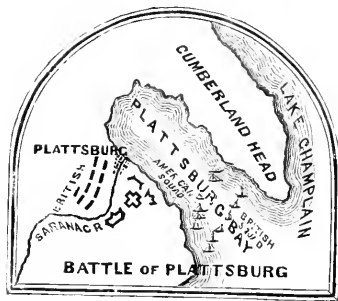
47. Mention the other naval battles. Where is the Demerara River?

48. How did the Americans obtain possession of Fort Erie? Where was this? To what battle did this lead?

vanced against the Americans, and the severe battle of Lundy's Lane was fought. This was probably the most stubbornly-contested battle of the war, and ended without any decisive result. The American generals, Brown and Scott, were both severely wounded, and General Ripley next day fell back with the army to Fort Erie, where General Gaines took the command.

50. **British besiege Fort Erie.**—General Drummond laid siege to Fort Erie on the 4th of August. On the 15th, he made a midnight assault, and was repulsed, with the loss of 1000 men. On the 17th, Gen. Brown, who had recovered from his wounds, made a sortie from the fort, and captured 400 British; after which Drummond raised the siege, and fell back across Chippewa Creek. In November Brown blew up Fort Erie, and crossed the Niagara into New York.

51. **Events at Plattsburg.**—General Macomb was in command of 2000 men at Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain. In September, General Prevost, at the head of 14,000 British veterans, advanced against Macomb, who fell behind the River Saranac. On the 11th, a combined attack was made by the British. Commodore Downie bore down on the American



fleet, under Commodore MacDonough, in Plattsburg Bay. Prevost at the same time attempted to cross the Saranac.

52. **The two Battles at Plattsburg.**—After a two hours' fight, the British commodore surrendered to MacDonough. On land, General Prevost was repulsed at every

49. What battle followed that of Chippewa? Describe it.

50. How did Drummond press the Americans? The assault. Describe the sortie of the garrison. What further is said of Drummond and Brown?

51. Who was at Plattsburg? What movement was made against him? Describe the plan of attack.

point, and during the night retreated, leaving his sick and wounded behind him, and a large part of his military stores. His whole loss was about 2500 men.



VICINITY OF WASHINGTON, 1814.

a few marines and militia, under Commodore Barney, attempted to stop them at Bladensburg, six miles from the capital, August 24. The marines were quickly dispersed, and Barney was wounded and made prisoner. The British immediately entered Washington, and burned the Capitol, President's House, and other buildings.

#### 54. Attack on Baltimore.—

Ross then retreated to his ships, and the British troops were taken to North Point, fourteen miles from Baltimore. From this point the troops were to move by land to attack that city, while the fleet bombarded Fort M'Henry. Ross was killed in a skirmish shortly after he began the march, March 12, and his troops advanced next day to the city. On the 13th the fleet bombarded the fort with-



VICINITY OF BALTIMORE, 1814.

52. Describe the battle on land. On the lake. What was the result?

53. To what place did the war change? What preparations were made there? Where was a stand made? What occurred at Washington?

out effect, and during the night the troops got on board the fleet and sailed away from the Chesapeake. Thus ended the attack on Baltimore.

**55. British in Mobile Bay and Florida.**—Florida was at this time still in possession of Spain, and was considered neutral territory. The Spaniards permitted the British to fit out an expedition at Pensacola against Fort Bowyer, in Mobile Bay. On September 15, the attack on the fort was repulsed, with severe loss on the part of the British, who returned in haste to Pensacola. General Jackson, the hero of the Creek War, was in command at the South. Marching rapidly from Mobile, he drove the British from Pensacola, November 7.

**56. British move against New Orleans.**—Shortly after this he hastened to the defense of New Orleans, which was threatened by the British. In December, a British fleet entered Lake Borgne (*born*), and its barges captured a small American flotilla that disputed its way. The army, composing 12,000 soldiers under General Pakenham and 4000 marines, was landed nine miles below the city. The advance-guard was attacked by Jackson on December 23, and a sharp fight took place.

**57. Battle of New Orleans.**—Four miles below the city, Jackson was encamped behind a broad trench stretching from the Mississippi, on his right, to a swamp on his left. On the 8th of January, 1815, the British moved to the assault, but were met by so steady and well-directed a fire from behind the intrenchments, that they were compelled to fall back in confusion, after showing wonderful bravery. Pakenham was killed, and 2000 of his men were killed or wounded. Strange to say, the loss of the Americans was only 7 killed and 6 wounded.

---

54. What was the next point of attack? What was the plan? What occurred on the march? How did the fleet succeed? What was the end of it all?

55. Where were the British active in the South? Why were they here? Where were they repulsed? Who drove them from Florida?

56. Against what place did the British move? Describe their movements, and what happened on their route. What is said of Jackson's attack?

57. Describe Jackson's position. Give a sketch of the battle of New Orleans.

**58. Naval Events.**—The Americans were less fortunate at sea during the years 1814-'15 than before. The *Essex*, Captain Porter, was captured by two British vessels in the harbor of Valparaiso, March, 1814. In January, the *PRESIDENT*, Commodore Decatur, was captured by a British squadron near the southern shore of Long Island. In February, 1815, the *CONSTITUTION*, Captain Stewart, captured two British sloops of war off Lisbon, Portugal; and in March the British brig *PENGUIN* surrendered to the *HORNET*, Captain Biddle, of equal force, near the Cape of Good Hope.

**59. The Hartford Convention.**—It has been already said that a large party in New England was opposed to the war. In the month of December, 1814, a convention, composed of 26 delegates from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, assembled at Hartford to discuss the grievances they had suffered from the war. The friends of the war declared the "Hartford Convention" treasonable; but there is no evidence that this charge was true. The Convention confined itself to a simple statement of grievances, and recommended some changes in the Constitution; it then, after a three weeks' session, adjourned. But it ruined the Federalist party in the estimation of the people.

**60. Treaty of Peace.**—The whole nation, without distinction of party, was rejoiced when the news arrived, in February, 1815, that a treaty of peace had been concluded at Ghent, December 24, 1814. Not a word was said in the treaty about oppressions on American commerce, nor about the right of search—the two causes of the war. When the war between France and England ended, there was no longer any necessity for continuing these oppressive measures.

---

58. What was the success at sea? Mention each naval event.

59. How did New England show her opposition to the war? How did the friends of the war regard this? What did the Convention do? How did it affect the Federalists as a party?

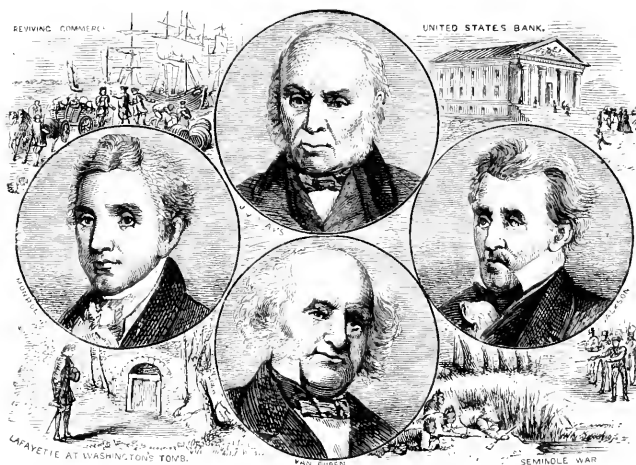
60. When and where was the treaty of peace made? What is said of it?

**61. War with Algiers.**—At the beginning of the war with England, the Dey of Algiers declared war against the United States, under pretense that his presents were not what he had demanded. In May, 1815, Commodore Decatur was sent with a fleet to the Mediterranean, and on board his ship compelled the Dey to sign a humiliating treaty of peace. Tunis and Tripoli were also effectually humbled by him. The States admitted during this administration were—Louisiana, in 1812, and Indiana, in 1816.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. What was the first capital, and how long? The second? The third?
2. Name the first four Presidents, give length of administrations, and dates.
3. Name and sketch some leading events of Washington's administration.
4. Who formed Washington's first cabinet?
5. What is said of Hamilton's measures?
6. Give the particulars regarding his death.
7. Name two important events in Adams's administration.
8. Mention the most important event of Jefferson's administration.
9. State why this was so important, and give particulars.
10. What foreign war occurred, and who were the chief actors in it?
11. What events took place, and how was it brought to a close?
12. What can you say of the difficulties with England?
13. How did Congress retaliate, and with what result?
14. What Indian war broke out in 1811? Give the cause and result.
15. What great event marks Madison's administration?
16. State clearly the causes of this.
17. With what movements did the war begin?
18. Where was the seat of war in 1812?
19. Describe the leading events of that year.
20. What was the general result of the year to the Americans?
21. Where was the seat of war in 1813?
22. What is said of the Indian war?
23. From whom did the English obtain active military assistance in 1812, 1813?
24. Give some of the leading events of 1813.
25. Where was the war carried on during 1814-'15?
26. Name the principal events at these points.
27. Describe the last battle of the war.
28. Mention two or three of the most brilliant naval events during the war.
29. Name the leading American generals. Who was the most celebrated? Why?
30. What foreign power gave assistance to the British in the South?
31. State what active measures were taken in reference to this.
32. What is said of the treaty of peace, and what it did not settle?
33. What war followed? What was the cause and result?
34. Where was the war unpopular, and how was opposition shown to it?
35. State what is said of the Hartford Convention, and its results.
36. Name the States admitted up to the year 1817.

61. What expedition was dispatched in 1815? Why? What was its success? What States were admitted during Madison's administration, and when?



## PART II.—FROM 1817 TO 1841.

## ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES MONROE—THE FIFTH PRESIDENT.

1817-1825.

1. **The New President.**—James Monroe, of Virginia, elected in the fall of 1816, was now President, and Daniel D. Tompkins, of New York, Vice-president. Mr. Monroe was personally very popular, and began his administration under the most favorable circumstances. The country was fast recovering from the ruin that had fallen on its commerce and manufactures during the war. There was now only one party, the Democratic.

2. **Jackson's Disregard of Spain.**—Toward the end of the year 1817, the Seminole Indians, instigated by the Spanish in Florida, attacked the settlers in Georgia. General Jackson, after subduing the Indians, marched to Florida, and took Fort St. Marks. While in this neigh-

1. Mention the circumstances under which President Monroe began his administration.



borhood, he hung two British subjects, on the charge of inciting the Indians to war. He then marched to Pensacola, which he occupied May, 1818.

3. **Florida ceded to the United States.**—Jackson was greatly blamed for his violation of Spanish territory, but was sustained by the Government. Spain was indignant at the conduct of the United States, and a long, unfriendly correspondence followed. Finally, in the year 1819, Spain agreed to cede Florida to the United States for the sum of \$5,000,000. The territory, however, was not formally given up until the year 1821.

4. **The Missouri Compromise.**—In 1820 Missouri applied for admission to the Union. This led to a bitter contest in Congress. The North favored her admission as a Free State; the South, as a Slave State. At length, in 1820, the famous "Missouri Compromise" was agreed on. By this she was admitted as a Slave State, but thenceforth slavery was prohibited in all other territory north of  $36^{\circ} 30'$  west of the Mississippi. This compromise was faithfully kept for more than thirty years.

5. **The Monroe Doctrine.**—In the fall of 1820 Monroe was re-elected President for four years. In the year 1822 the South American republics were struggling with Spain for independence. Monroe, in a message, advised that the independence of these republics should be recognized by the United States; and, in addition, declared that "the American continents are not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers," or, in other words, that America must be republican. This is known as the "Monroe doctrine."

6. **Lafayette's Visit.**—The famous Frenchman, the friend of America, General Lafayette, now an old man, came to

2. What broke out in 1817? Who was sent there, and what of his conduct?

3. How was his conduct regarded? What did this lead to?

4. What is said of Missouri? Of the contest? How was it settled? State its provisions.

5. What is said of the election of 1820? What is the Monroe doctrine? What led to the announcement of this?

America on a visit in 1824. From the moment he landed he became the guest of the nation, and wherever he went he was regarded with the most profound respect.

7. **Election for President.**—Monroe declined a re-election, and a very exciting canvass followed, chiefly because party lines were very much confused. There were four candidates put in nomination—John Q. Adams, son of the second President, General Jackson, W. H. Crawford, and Henry Clay. There was no choice by the people, and the election went to the House of Representatives in Congress. Here Adams was chosen President, in 1824.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JOHN QUINCY ADAMS—THE SIXTH PRESIDENT.

1825-1829.

8. **John Quincy Adams**, son of the second President, was inaugurated March 4, 1825. His administration had few events of great importance. The year 1826 was remarkable for the death of the Presidents, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson. They died on the 4th of July, within a few hours of each other.

9. **The Tariff Act of 1828.**—The country had increased steadily in prosperity since the war. Manufactures had spread extensively throughout the Eastern and some of the Middle States. But the goods from Europe, particularly from England, interfered with these American manufactures. To enable the latter to compete favorably with those of Europe, a tariff with high protecting duties was passed by Congress in 1828.

10. **The American System—Protection.**—The great advocate and author of protection to American manufactures was Henry Clay, of Kentucky, and it received the name of "The American System." It was adopted only after

---

6. State what is said of Lafayette.

7. Give the particulars of the election for President in 1824.

8. Whose son was the new President? What occurred in 1826?

9. What act was passed in 1828? What led to its passage?

many fierce debates, and became a fruitful source of dispute during succeeding administrations.

11. **Jackson elected President.**—The election for President during the fall of 1828 ended in the choice of General Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee, the hero of New Orleans. His election was considered a triumph of the Democrats over the Whigs and the protective system.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JACKSON—THE SEVENTH PRESIDENT.

1829-1837.

12. **Jackson and the United States Bank.**—President Jackson began his administration by an attack on the United States Bank, which had applied to Congress for a renewal of its charter. In spite of the President's opposition, Congress passed a bill renewing the charter. Jackson vetoed this, and the friends of the bank not having votes to pass the bill over his veto, the charter expired in 1836. Thus Jackson finally gained the day.

13. **South Carolina resists.**—His next and still more serious contest was with the "Nullifiers" of South Carolina. Congress, in the year 1832, added new duties to the tariff. Immediately the people of South Carolina met in Convention, and declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and therefore "NULL AND VOID." They, moreover, threatened to resist the collection of duties at Charleston by force of arms, and to secede from the Union.

14. **The Quarrel settled.**—Jackson proceeded promptly to put down the Carolina Nullifiers by force. Before any collision took place, a compromise was effected in Congress through the influence of Henry Clay. It was agreed that the tariff duties should be gradually reduced; and

---

10. Who was the author of this system? What was the effect of its passage?

11. Who was chosen President, and when? How was his election regarded?

12. With what did he begin his term? How far did the bank succeed?

13. What was his next contest? What led to this? What did the Carolinians do? Why were they called "Nullifiers?"

thus the feelings of the Carolinians were for the time quieted.

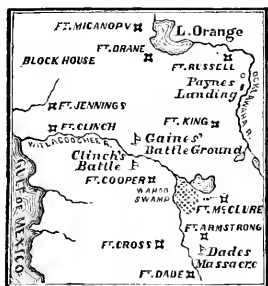
**15. Black Hawk War.**—While this was going on, the Indians in the north-west, in what is now Wisconsin, led by the chief Black Hawk, attacked the whites. Then followed a struggle of six months, called the “Black Hawk War,” in which the chief was taken prisoner. At its close, the Indians removed beyond the Mississippi.

**16. Jackson and the French.**—In the fall of 1832 Jackson was re-elected President, and Martin Van Buren was chosen Vice-president. In 1834 he made a demand on France for \$5,000,000, which that Government had agreed to pay the United States for injuries done to American commerce. For some years the installments of this money were not paid as agreed. Jackson ordered the American minister to leave Paris, and urged Congress to seize French vessels. The French Government was alarmed at these movements, and paid the money.

**17. War with the Seminoles** broke out in Florida in 1835. They had agreed by treaty to remove west of the Mississippi, but refused to go when the time arrived. On the 28th of December,

Major Dade, while on his march with 117 men, was massacred by the Seminoles, and only four of the party escaped. On the same day, many miles away from the scene, General Thomson and some friends, while dining quietly outside of Fort King, were surprised and killed.

**18. A protracted War.**—There was severe fighting on



14. How did Jackson act? What quieted matters?

15. What war broke out? Give the particulars, and the result.

16. Who was chosen President, and when? What is said of the French payment? How did Jackson act, and what was the effect?

17. What war now broke out, and when? Its origin. Show the sudden movements of the Seminoles. Where did these take place?

December 31, and during the year 1836, but nothing was gained by the whites. The Seminoles, as fast as they were driven by the troops to the more open ground, retired farther into the swamps and everglades. Sometimes the soldiers would find them here, but the fighting that immediately followed produced very trifling results. It proved to be a long and terribly expensive contest.

**19. Presidential Election.**—Jackson's second term was drawing to a close, and the election for President took place November, 1836. Martin Van Buren, the Democratic candidate, was chosen President, and Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky, Vice-president.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF MARTIN VAN BUREN—THE EIGHTH PRESIDENT.

1837-1841.

**20. The Panic of 1837.**—The beginning of Van Buren's administration was marked by a period of great commercial distress throughout the country. Merchants everywhere failed, and thousands in all walks of life were thrown out of employment. The cause of this was speculation and overtrading. Congress met in extra session in September to devise some remedy for the distress, but it could do little. Time proved the only remedy.

**21. Rebellion in Canada.**—In 1837, a rebellion broke out in Canada, on the Niagara frontier, against England, and the rebels had many active sympathizers on the American side of the river. The President issued a proclamation forbidding all expeditions from the United States, and sent troops to enforce it. In a short time the British Government put down the rebellion.

**22. The Sub-treasury Bill** was the great measure of this

---

18. What is said of the progress of the war? Why was it so slow?

19. Who succeeded Jackson? What party triumphed?

20. With what event did Van Buren's term begin? Give an account of this. What was done to help the country, and with what success?

21. When and where did rebellion occur? How did the President act?

administration. It was Van Buren's remedy for speculation and overtrading, by removing the public funds from the bank vaults to offices throughout the country, called sub-treasuries. The bill passed Congress in 1840.

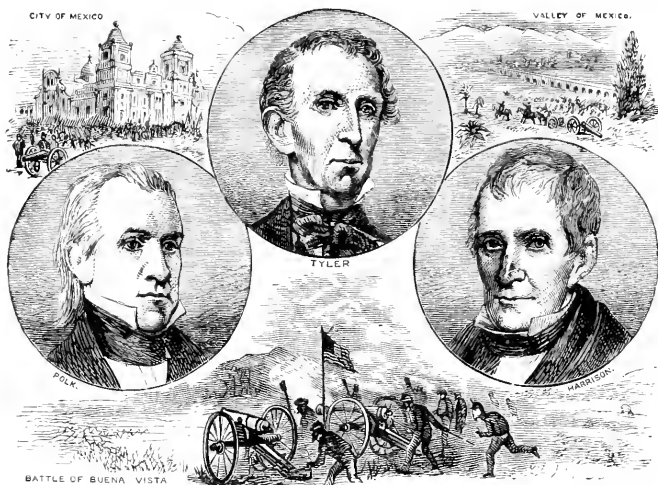
**23. Presidential Election.**—The President was blamed for the distress that the country had suffered during his administration. Mainly in consequence of this, he lost his re-election in the fall of 1840, and General William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, the hero of Tippecanoe, and the candidate of the Whigs, was chosen President. John Tyler, of Virginia, was chosen Vice-president.

---

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How long was Monroe President, and when?
2. Give the leading events of his administration, and dates.
3. What was the only warlike trouble during his Presidency?
4. What illustrious man was connected with this?
5. State what is said of his movements.
6. To what acquisition of territory did all this lead?
7. Describe the Missouri Compromise, and what led to it.
8. What is understood by the Monroe doctrine?
9. From what cause did the announcement of this arise?
10. Who were elected President and Vice-president in 1824?
11. What peculiarity was there about this election?
12. Name the chief events of Adams's administration.
13. What was the result of the Presidential election in 1828?
14. State the principal events in Jackson's military career.
15. What were the leading events of his administration?
16. When, how long, and what was the Black Hawk War?
17. Give an account of Jackson's difficulties with France.
18. What is the history of the South Carolina troubles?
19. Mention some of the events at the beginning of the Seminole War.
20. Who succeeded Jackson as President, and when?
21. In what condition was the country in 1837?
22. What efforts were made to remedy this distress?
23. What was Van Buren's remedy?
24. State what occurred on the Canada frontiers.
25. Who was elected President in 1840?
26. Why did Van Buren lose his re-election?
27. How many Presidents were there up to the year 1841?
28. Name them, and give the respective terms of each, and the dates.

- 
22. What was Van Buren's greatest measure? Describe it.
  23. Who succeeded Van Buren? Why did he lose the election?



## PART III.—FROM 1841 TO 1849.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON AND JOHN TYLER—NINTH AND TENTH PRESIDENTS.

## 1841-1845.

1. **Death of the President.**—General Harrison was inaugurated March 4, 1841. He immediately called an extra session of Congress to devise some plan to restore public prosperity. Before Congress met he died, April 4, and Vice-president Tyler succeeded to the Presidency.

2. **Tyler leaves the Whigs.**—Congress met, and repealed the Sub-treasury Bill. It also passed a general bankrupt bill, and two bills to establish a national bank. Tyler vetoed the two last, much to the indignation of the Whig party; and thereupon all the President's cabinet except Daniel Webster, Secretary of State, resigned.

1. What did Harrison first do? What happened before Congress met? Who succeeded to the Presidency?

2. What measures did Congress pass? What followed?

3. **Boundary of Maine settled.**—Mr. Webster, and Lord Ashburton, the British commissioner, settled the northern boundary-line of Maine in the year 1842. This boundary had been a long standing source of trouble between England and the United States, and at one time threatened to lead to war.

4. **Rebellion in Rhode Island.**—The same year, 1842, an insurrection, known as the Dorr Rebellion, broke out in Rhode Island. The old charter, granted to the colony through the efforts of Roger Williams, was still the constitution of the State. One of its provisions required that all voters should possess a certain amount of property. Many of the people wished to change this, and form a new constitution. Two parties were formed, and two governors were elected. One of these, named Dorr, at the head of the "suffrage party," took up arms; but before blood was shed the President interfered with United States' troops. A free suffrage constitution was adopted in November of the same year.

5. **Texas seeks Admission.**—The great question of Tyler's administration was the annexation of Texas. This territory had been a province of Mexico, but its people threw off the Spanish yoke, and declared their independence in 1835. In April, 1844, they applied for admission to the American Union, but their application was rejected by the Senate, July 8.

6. **Annexation of Texas approved.**—The admission of Texas was strongly opposed by a large body of the American people, because it was seen that it would lead to a war with Mexico. During the fall of 1844, the election for President took place. The canvass, which was very bitter, was mainly fought on the annexation of Texas, and the friends of that measure triumphed in the election of James K. Polk, of Tennessee, a Democrat.

---

3. What boundary was settled? When, and by whom?

4. What rebellion occurred? Where? When? Give the cause. How was it settled?

5. What question came up? Give its history, and how it was received.

6. How far was it popular? What showed the true feeling?



7. **Annexation settled.**—The Texas question was again brought before the Senate in December. On March 1, 1845, a resolution, annexing Texas to the United States, was passed, and was immediately signed by President Tyler, two days before the close of his administration.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES K. POLK—THE ELEVENTH PRESIDENT.

1845-1849.

8. **Oregon Boundary settled.**—The north-western boundary between British America and Oregon was settled soon after the beginning of Polk's administration. There was a very warlike feeling on this point during the latter part of the previous administration. But now the all-engrossing subject in the minds of the people was WAR WITH MEXICO, which was rapidly approaching.

9. **General Taylor sent to Texas.**—On the 4th of July, 1845, Texas approved the bill of annexation passed by the United States Congress in March. In the same month, July, General Taylor was ordered to Texas, and took post at Corpus Christi, near the mouth of the River Nueces (*nū-cēs*). Mexico considered Taylor's movement as an invasion of Mexican territory, and therefore an act of war.

10. **War with Mexico—Fighting at the Rio Grande.**—In the spring of 1846, Taylor moved westward to the Rio Grande (*rē-o-gran'-da*), opposite Matamoras, where the Mexicans were stationed, and built a fort, afterward called Fort Brown. Soon after, a reconnoitring party under Captain Thornton was surprised by the Mexicans, and nearly all killed. This was the first blood shed.

11. **Taylor saves Point Isabel.**—There were United States stores at Point Isabel, in Taylor's rear. The Mex-

7. When was it again brought up? How and when was it settled?

8. What question was settled early in 1845? Why was this fortunate? What subject now engrossed public attention?

9. How did Texas act? What occurred in July? How did Mexico regard this?

10. When and where did Taylor move? Where was the first blood shed?

icans began to push in between the fort and the Point. Taylor, being anxious about his stores, left Major Brown in command, and marched to Point Isabel, May 1. Here he was re-enforced, and on May 7 began his return to the Rio Grande with 2300 men.

12. **Battles of May 8th and 9th.**—Next day, 6000 Mexicans, under General Arista, met him at Palo Alto (*pah'-lo ahl'-to*), where a severe battle was fought, in which the Mexicans were defeated. Late on the following day, May 9, the Mexicans made a stand at Resaca de la Palma (*res-ă'-kă dă lâ pahl-mă*), and were beaten, with the loss of over a thousand men.

13. **Taylor reaches Fort Brown.**—Taylor next day reached the fort, which had been constantly bombarded during his absence, and found Major Brown mortally wounded. In his honor, the fort was named Fort Brown, now known as Brownsville. On the 18th of May, Taylor crossed the river and took possession of Matamoras.

14. **War declared—Plan of Operations.**—The news from the Rio Grande produced great excitement in the United States. Congress, on May 11, declared war, voted \$10,000,000, and ordered 80,000 volunteers to be raised. The war was very popular among the young, and the Government readily obtained men enough. The plan of operations was very simple. An army was to overrun New Mexico and California, another was to march into Chihuahua (*chee-wă'-wă*) and the northern part of Mexico, a third was to operate on the Rio Grande.

15. **Capture of Monterey.**—At Matamoras General Taylor's army was re-enforced, making it 6000 men. With these he attacked the strongly fortified town of Monterey (*mon-tă-ră'*), in New Leon (*lă-on'*), and, after severe fighting for four days, the garrison surrendered, September 24.

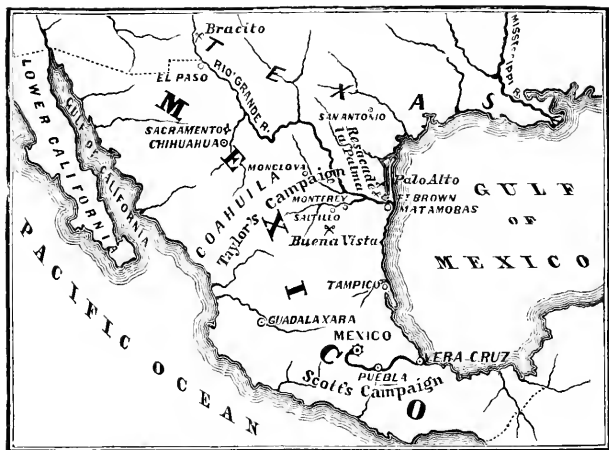
---

11. Why did Taylor leave the fort? What is said of his movements?

12. What battles occurred on his way back? Give dates.

13. What happened at the fort? What was it named? What of Taylor?

14. State the effect of the news in the United States. The measures of Congress. The feeling of the people about the war. The plan of the campaign.



CAMPAIGNS IN MEXICO.

Taylor then agreed to an armistice with the Mexican Government for eight weeks.

16. **Taylor and Wool at Saltillo.**—The armistice terminated November 13, and General Wool, who had been ordered to abandon operations against Chihuahua, joined that part of Taylor's army which had advanced to Saltillo (*sahl-teel'-yo*). On November 14, Tampico (*tam-pê-ko*), on the Gulf of Mexico, surrendered to a United States squadron under Captain Connor.

17. **Taylor loses his best Troops.**—The United States Government had meanwhile planned an expedition to penetrate to the city of Mexico by way of Vera Cruz (*vā-rā kroos*), and placed General Scott in command. As a part of the plan, General Taylor was ordered to send to Scott, his superior officer, a very considerable part of his troops and some of his very best officers. By doing this, he was left with little more than 5000 men.

- 
15. What is said of Taylor's operations? To what did he agree?  
 16. Who joined Taylor, and where? What occurred elsewhere in November?  
 17. What loss did Taylor suffer? What was the cause of this?

18. **Victory at Buena Vista.**—General Santa Anna, taking advantage of Taylor's diminished numbers, moved against him with 20,000 Mexicans. Taylor took a position at Buena Vista (*bwa'nă ve'stă*), where a severe battle was fought, February 23, 1847, in which Santa Anna was defeated. In the summer Taylor returned to the United States, leaving General Wool in command.

19. **Kearny's Operations.**—General Kearny (*kar'ny*) had command of the operations against New Mexico and California. In June, 1846, he left Fort Leavenworth, on the Missouri, and after marching 1000 miles, occupied Santa Fé, August 18. He then pressed westward to California.

20. **Doniphan's great March.**—When Kearny left Santa Fé, he ordered Colonel Doniphan to push south into Chihuahua. After a march of more than 1000 miles, he finally reached Saltillo in safety. On the way he defeated the Mexicans at Bracito (*bră-the'-to*), December 25, and at Sacramento, February 28, 1847.

21. **Fremont in California.**—Important events had already taken place in California. Fremont, an active United States officer, was exploring the Far West at the beginning of the war. While thus engaged, he was ordered to protect the American settlers in California, who were threatened by the Mexican governor. He hastened thither with 60 men, and, being joined by his countrymen, compelled the Mexicans, after a series of skirmishes, to move to the south. California was declared independent July 5.

22. **California conquered.**—On the 7th of July, Commodore Sloat, with some war vessels, bombarded and captured Monterey, on the Pacific coast. Commodore Stockton arrived, and superseded Sloat. In a short time all of California fell into the hands of the United States; and on February 8, 1847, Kearny assumed the governorship.

18. What important battle followed? What is said of Taylor?

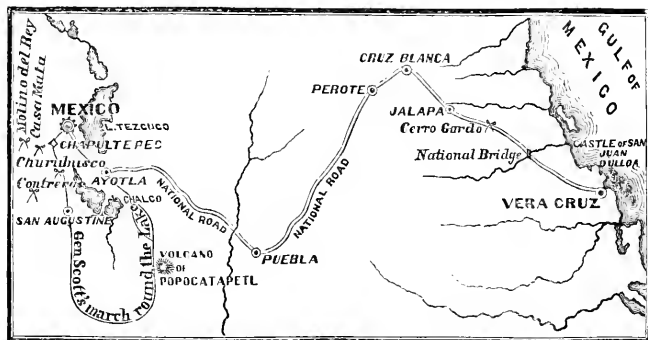
19. What were Kearny's orders? Describe his march, and his final movement.

20. What romantic expedition from Santa Fe is mentioned? Its success?

21. Who was Fremont? Where did he go? What did he achieve?

22. State further operations in California. What is said of Kearny?

23. **Scott's Expedition—Vera Cruz.**—The United States Government, in sending an expedition to the capital of Mexico, determined to “conquer a peace.” General Scott, commander-in-chief, landed near Vera Cruz, with 13,000 men, on March 9. That city was defended by the strong castle of San Juan de Ulloa (*dā-ool-o'ā*). After a severe bombardment, the castle and city surrendered, March 27.



SCOTT'S CAMPAIGN IN MEXICO.

24. **March to the Capital.**—The march to the city of Mexico now began. Santa Anna, with 15,000 Mexicans, held the heights of Cerro Gordo, which commanded a mountain pass. On the 18th of April the heights were stormed, and by noon were in possession of the Americans. Next day Scott entered Jalapa (*hă-lă'pă*), and on the 15th of May, without resistance, the troops occupied the large city of Puebla (*pweb'lă*). Here the army rested, and waited three months for re-enforcements.

25. **Within Sight of the City.**—On August 7, General Scott resumed his march with 10,000 men, and on the 11th was within fifteen miles of the capital. This was defended by strong works, garrisoned by more than

23. What expedition is now mentioned? What was its object? Describe the first movements.

24. What is said of the march? The first engagement? The occupation of the city?

30,000 Mexicans. The direct road seemed the most dangerous, and therefore General Scott turned to the left, and approached by way of San Augustin (*aw'-goos-teen'*).

26. **The Defenses of Mexico.**—There were strong Mexican works on this route. These were the fortified camp of Contreras (*con-trā'ras*), the Castle of San Antonio, the heights of Cherubusco, and the Castle of Chapultepec (*chā-pool-tā-pek'*). On the same day, August 20, Contreras, San Antonio, and Cherubusco, one after another, were carried by assault. Less than 10,000 Americans had beaten 30,000 Mexicans behind strong defenses.

27. **The last Struggle begun.**—General Scott advanced within three miles of the city. Santa Anna pleaded for delay, and Scott granted him an armistice, hoping for a surrender. The Mexicans used the time to strengthen the strong works at Molino del Rey (*mo-lé-no del rā*) and Chapultepec. Scott, on learning this, ordered an assault, September 8, on Molino del Rey, which was captured by General Worth, after a bloody battle.

28. **The closing Battle before the City.**—On the 12th, General Scott opened a heavy fire on Chapultepec, which shattered the walls, and on the 13th it was taken by assault. The city now lay at his mercy, and on the 14th General Scott and his army entered the capital of Mexico. Santa Anna and his officers had fled.

29. **Driven off at Puebla.**—At Puebla there were some 1800 sick American soldiers, in the care of Major Childs, besieged by a body of Mexicans, whom Santa Anna joined after his flight from the capital. A detachment sent by General Lane came to the help of the sorely-pressed Americans, and the Mexicans were driven off.

30. **Treaty of Peace.**—The war was now ended. On February 2, 1848, the Mexicans concluded a treaty of

---

25. When does he see the capital? What of the approach, and change of route?

26. Give the defenses of Mexico. The battles.

27. What delay occurred? When? The next battle, and results.

28. The closing battle. Result. What of Santa Anna?

29. What occurred at Puebla? Who was in the attack? The result.

peace with American commissioners at Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwă-dă-loo-pă he-dahl'go*). It made the Rio Grande the western boundary of Texas, and gave the United States the provinces of New Mexico and California. Mexico, in return, received \$15,000,000 from the United States. Peace was proclaimed by President Polk, July 4, 1848.

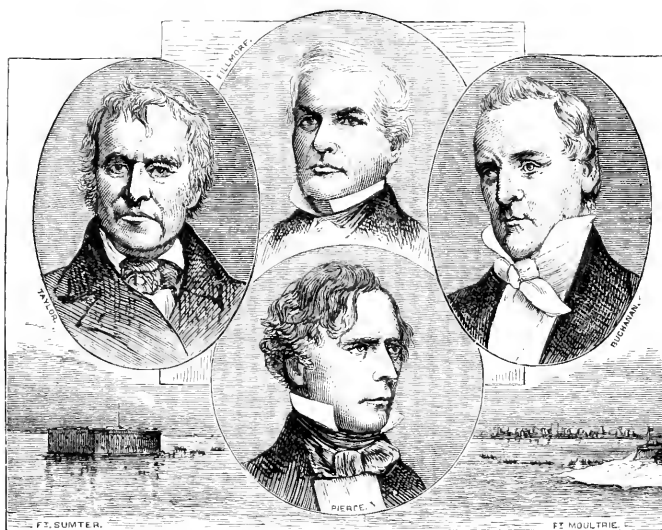
31. **Discovery of Gold.**—While the treaty was yet pending—January, 1848—gold was discovered on the Sacramento River, in California. The news spread with rapidity through the United States, and an immense number of emigrants, some by way of Cape Horn, some across the Plains, soon found their way to the gold-diggings.

32. **Presidential Election.**—In the fall of 1848, General Zachary Taylor—one of the heroes of the Mexican War, and a Whig, was elected President over General Cass, of Michigan, a Democrat.

---

#### REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. Why was John Tyler inaugurated President?
  2. State the particulars of the Dorr rebellion.
  3. What were the causes of the Mexican War?
  4. Who were the leading generals engaged on both sides?
  5. Name all the battles in which General Taylor was engaged. Give dates.
  6. What led to the battles of May 8th and 9th?
  7. What part of Mexico was the scene of Taylor's operations?
  8. Where, and in what battles was General Scott engaged? Give dates.
  9. Describe the different battles in the neighborhood of the capital.
  10. How long a time intervened between the attack on Vera Cruz and the surrender of the city of Mexico?
  11. Describe any other important expedition.
  12. Give the particulars of the conquest of California.
  13. How long did the war last, and in whose administration was it?
  14. When and where was a treaty of peace made?
  15. Give the terms of the treaty.
  16. What remarkable event occurred in the new territory?
  17. How did this affect the population of the Pacific coast?
  18. What States were admitted into the Union during the period embraced in Part III.? See pp. 151, 159.
- 
30. Treaty of peace, when made, and where? Its provisions.
  31. What important discovery? When? What effect was produced?
  32. Who was chosen President? What is said of his opponents?



#### PART IV.—1849 TO 1861.

ADMINISTRATIONS OF ZACHARY TAYLOR AND MILLARD FILLMORE—TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH PRESIDENTS.

#### 1849-1853.

1. **California seeks Admission.**—The most important event in the administration of President Taylor grew out of the question of slavery. Indeed, onward now to the Civil War, we shall find this to be the main question in all the administrations. California grew so rapidly in population, that in February, 1850, it applied for admission into the Union as a Free State.

2. **Death of the President.**—This was the signal for a bitter contest in Congress, which spread throughout the country. While the discussion was going on, General Taylor died, July 9, 1850, and was succeeded by Millard

---

1. What was now the great question of the day? What is said of California?



Fillmore, of New York, Vice-president. Taylor was President a little more than one year and four months.

3. **Clay's Compromise Bill.**—In September, 1850, the excitement on the slavery question was in a measure quieted by the passage of Henry Clay's Compromise Bill. It provided for other things besides the admission of California, and was nicknamed the "Omnibus Bill." Its principal points were that California should be admitted as a free state; that two territories, Utah and New Mexico, should be organized, without mention of slavery; that the traffic in slaves should be prohibited in the District of Columbia; and that a law should be passed securing the arrest and return of fugitive slaves.

ADMINISTRATION OF FRANKLIN PIERCE—THE FOURTEENTH  
PRESIDENT.

1853-1857.

4. **New Territory purchased.**—Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, succeeded Fillmore as President. He had been elected over General Scott, the Whig candidate, and John P. Hale, the Free-soil candidate. At an early period in Pierce's administration, a large addition to the territory of the United States was made by purchase from Mexico. This was known as the Gadsden Purchase, and was erected into the Territory of Arizona.

5. **Excitement on Slavery.**—Although Clay's Compromise Bill for a time quieted public excitement, it was not long before a very bitter feeling was produced by that part of it known as the Fugitive Slave Act. The people of the North in several instances resisted the officers attempting to arrest fugitive slaves. Some of the Free States passed Personal Liberty Bills declaring all slaves

---

2. What did this produce? What occurred? Who succeeded him?

3. What compromise was made? How nicknamed? State its provisions.

4. Who succeeded Fillmore? What is said of the election? What addition of territory was made? State the additions of territory from 1789 till 1853.

free when they came within their limits. This, again, deeply irritated the people of the Southern States.

6. **Kansas-Nebraska Bill.**—The excitement showed itself strongly when, in December, 1853, Senator Douglas introduced into Congress his famous Kansas-Nebraska Bill. In this, Kansas and Nebraska were organized into territories, and the settlers were left free to choose whether they would have slavery or not. This was contrary to the MISSOURI COMPROMISE of 1820, which prohibited slavery in this whole region. The bill passed, May, 1854.

7. **The Struggle in Kansas.**—In Nebraska there was no struggle; it was too far north. But there at once began a long and bitter contest in Kansas, among its own settlers, whether it should be pro-slavery or free-soil. This struggle was watched with the most intense anxiety throughout the country. In the midst of it, in the fall of 1856, the Presidential election took place, and James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was chosen President over John C. Fremont, the Free-soil candidate.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES BUCHANAN—THE FIFTEENTH PRESIDENT.

1857-1861.

8. **Public Opinion on Slavery.**—The anti-slavery feeling of the country showed great strength in the support it gave Fremont, and it continued to gain strength as the months rolled on. The Free and Slave State settlers in Kansas still struggled, and blood was frequently shed. Each party had its own government, and their disputes were discussed in Congress.

9. **John Brown's Raid.**—One of the most active of these Kansas Free State settlers was old John Brown,

---

5. What produced renewed excitement? In what way?

6. What bill increased this? Mention its provisions. What great measure did it destroy?

7. What contest began? Why not in Nebraska? What of the election?

8. Show the public feeling on slavery. What is said of Kansas?

the hero of some sharp fighting there. Leaving Kansas, he went to Virginia to liberate the slaves, and on the night of October 16, 1859, with twenty-one companions, seized the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry. After holding it for two days, he was overpowered by the State and Federal troops, made prisoner, and thirteen of his band were killed.

**10. His Trial and Execution.**—He and six of his companions were tried, convicted, and hung, December 2, 1859. He died with remarkable firmness. On his trial, Brown steadily affirmed that his only object was to liberate the slaves, and that he acted without advice or encouragement; but, notwithstanding this, the North was blamed. "John Brown's raid" served to inflame still more the people of the South against the North.

**11. Four Presidential Candidates.**—In this excited state of the public mind the election for President took place. There were four candidates: Douglas, the representative of popular sovereignty in the Territories, and Northern Democracy; Breckinridge, of pro-slavery, and Southern Democracy; Lincoln, of the exclusion of slavery, and the Republican party; and Bell, of the Constitutional, or Union, party, which said nothing for or against slavery.

**12. South Carolina secedes from the Union.**—The Republicans triumphed in the election of Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois. This was taken as a grievous offense by the South, which had threatened to secede from the Union should Lincoln be elected. In December they began to put these threats into execution. South Carolina was the first to move. A convention assembled at Charleston, and on the 20th resolved South Carolina out of the Union.

**13. Fort Sumter.**—Major Anderson, a United States officer, had at this time command of the Government troops in Charleston Harbor. The conduct of the Carolinians

---

9. Who was John Brown? What is said of his raid, and its success?

10. What of his trial? What was the effect of the raid on the country?

11. Name the candidates for the Presidency. Give the platforms of each.

12. Who was elected? How was it regarded by the South? What followed?

made him anxious about the safety of the forts, and for greater security he removed his troops from Fort Moultrie, on Sullivan's Island, to Fort Sumter, in the centre of the harbor. The Carolinians were indignant at this, and erected heavy batteries commanding the fort.

**14. Re-enforcements for Sumter driven back.**—Anderson had only 80 men, and was short of provisions. Accordingly, in January, the United States Government sent off a merchant steamer, with supplies and re-enforcements for Sumter. The Carolina batteries fired on her at the mouth of the harbor, and forced her to return. This was on January 10. Anderson could get neither men nor provisions, and there he lay, nearly surrounded by batteries growing stronger and stronger every day.

**15. Secession of six more States.**—In less than six weeks the States of Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas followed South Carolina, and seceded from the Union. In February, 1861, delegates from six of these States met at Montgomery, Alabama, and formed a government called the Confederate States of America. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen President, and A. H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-president.

**16. Secessionists seize United States Property.**—The seceding States promptly seized most of the forts, arsenals, navy-yards, and public property within their borders. It is supposed that guns and military stores alone worth over \$20,000,000 fell into their hands. Fort Pickens, near Pensacola, saved by the energy of Lieutenant Slemmer, Fort Sumter, and some forts at the south point of Florida, were all that were left to the United States within the limits of the seceding States.

**17. State of Things at Washington.**—Meanwhile the Government at Washington did little to arrest the prog-

---

13. Who was Major Anderson? Where was he? Where did he move, and why? Give the result of this.

14. What was his force? What help was sent? What took place on January 10.

15. What other States seceded? What did they do in February?

16. What did they secure? What forts were saved to the Union?

ress of these events. Compromises were prepared by influential men, but the South scorned them. The President seemed paralyzed. The friends of the South were everywhere active and hopeful. The North was as yet divided in sentiment, and uncertain in its action. In this state of gloom and anxiety at the North, but of zeal, resolution, and activity at the South, Buchanan's term ended.

---

### GENERAL REFLECTIONS.

1. **Negro Slavery** was the great cause of the approaching war. It began at Jamestown in 1620, and growing slowly at first, soon spread rapidly among the Southern colonies. The slaves performed the work in the tobacco fields, and in the rice and cotton plantations. When, in 1793, the cotton-gin, a machine to separate the cotton seed from the fibre, was invented, slave labor came into great demand; so that from 650,000 slaves in the South in 1790, the number had increased in 1860 to 4,000,000.

2. **Slavery North and South.**—The great body of the people in the North had from the first been opposed to negro slavery. There were slaves, it is true, in nearly all the Northern colonies, but they did not increase there rapidly. The colder climate, and particularly free labor, prevented this. Many of the leading men at the South also opposed slavery at first, but the wants of the South for labor, especially in the cotton plantations, carried the day; and the labor of the slave became one of the chief sources of Southern wealth and power.

3. **The State Rights Doctrine.**—There were other, but minor, causes that led to secession. A large part of the South, South Carolina in particular, advocated the doctrine of STATE RIGHTS. They believed that the United

17. Describe the state of things at Washington? How was the South acting?

1. What was the great cause of secession? What is said of its growth? What invention greatly increased it? Give the numbers showing this.

2. Give the early opinions North and South on slavery. How was early opinion at the South overborne?

States were only a league or union that could be broken whenever any of the States thought best. This view was opposed to the idea of a strong, permanent, national union.

4. **The South and the Tariff.**—Again, there was the **TARIFF** question, on which the extreme South was opposed to the North. The South was slaveholding, and produced tobacco, rice, cotton, and latterly sugar. The North was a manufacturing people, and had goods to sell. The South said they could buy what they needed cheaper in Europe than from the North, and that a protective tariff benefited the North at the expense of the South.

5. **The Struggle between North and South for Power.**—But the great question of slavery underlay and overtopped every other question, and led to the long struggle for power between the North and South, which ended in secession. It was a struggle whether slavery or free labor should have most territory, and consequently the greatest number of States and representatives in Congress. The chief events that show this struggle were:

- I. The contest ending in the Missouri Compromise, page 159.
- II. The annexation of Texas, to give more slave territory, page 151.
- III. The Compromise Bill of 1850, and particularly that part—
- IV. The Fugitive Slave Act, page 159.
- V. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill, page 160.

6. **Secession long determined on.**—The John Brown raid and the election of Lincoln only gave the South a convenient excuse for seceding. The leaders said they had been preparing for secession for several years. When, at the end of the great Kansas-Nebraska struggle, it was

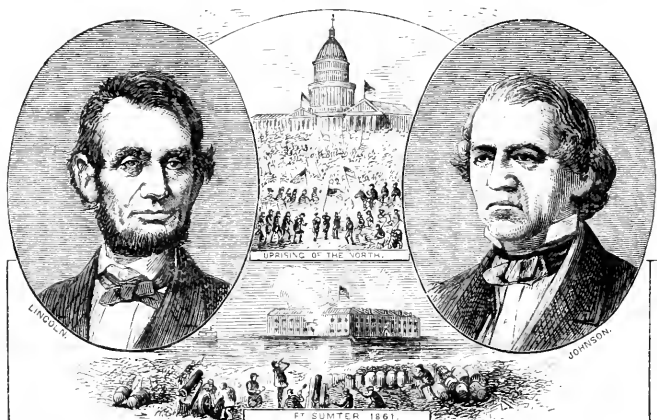
- 
3. What other cause led to secession? Define it. To what was it opposed?
  4. How did the South regard the tariff question? State fully what was said.
  5. For what did the South and North contend? Mention the chief events that show this struggle. Describe each of these from the past history as stated.

seen that nothing could prevent the Free States from outnumbering the Slave States in Congress, the political struggle was virtually ended. The only hope of the South was in secession, which they supposed would be peaceable, but in this they were grievously mistaken.

---

## REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. How was Harrison distinguished before he became President ?
  2. When and in what way did California become a source of contention ?
  3. State the object and chief points of the Omnibus Bill.
  4. What important event occurred during its discussion ?
  5. Who succeeded Harrison ?
  6. When was the Compromise Bill adopted ? Who was its author
  7. Who succeeded Fillmore as President ?
  8. What addition of territory was made early in his term ?
  9. How was the Compromise Bill regarded at the North ?
  10. Describe Senator Douglas's famous bill of 1853.
  11. How was it received in Congress and by the country ?
  12. What great compromise did it break ?
  13. What is said of the struggle in Kansas ?
  14. What occurred during the contest there ?
  15. How did public feeling show itself in this election ?
  16. What remarkable train of events sprang from Kansas troubles ?
  17. Give the particulars of John Brown's movements.
  18. What effect did these produce ?
  19. State the different candidates for the Presidency in 1860.
  20. What followed the election of Lincoln, and how soon ?
  21. What took place in Charleston Harbor ?
  22. What insult was given to the United States flag, January, 1861 ?
  23. Enumerate the political events that marked the progress of secession.
  24. Describe the active hostile movements of the Secessionists.
  25. What were the state of things at Washington during all this ?
  26. What is said of negro slavery as the cause of secession ?
  27. Describe the two other great subjects of Southern grievance.
  28. Enumerate the events that marked the progress of the slavery struggle.
  29. How long had secession been determined on ?
- 
6. What other events are alluded to ? What was averred at the South ? When did the contest for political power virtually end ? In what was the South greatly mistaken ?



## PART V.—1861 TO 1869.

### ADMINISTRATION OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN — THE SIXTEENTH PRESIDENT.

#### CIVIL WAR: 1861-1865.

1. **Lincoln's Life threatened.**—There were loud threats from the Secessionists that Mr. Lincoln would not be allowed to enter the White House. It was even said that he would be attacked on his journey to the capital. Great precautions were taken, therefore, to secure his safe arrival at Washington, and on the 4th of March, 1861, he was inaugurated with an imposing display of military force.

2. **His Inaugural Message** was full of expressions of good-will to the South, urging obedience to the laws, and affirming that he “had no lawful right,” and “no inclination,” to interfere with slavery; that secession meant anarchy; and that, if war should arise, the South would be the aggressors. These temperate words were received by the Secessionists with disdain.

- 
1. What threats were made? What is said of his journey and inauguration?
  2. What is said of Lincoln's inaugural address?



3. **Attempt to provision Fort Sumter.**—On the 21st of March, the Cabinet at Washington determined to provision Fort Sumter at all hazards. But some delay occurred in getting the fleet ready for this purpose. The Confederates, hearing of these preparations, sent orders from Montgomery to demand the surrender of the fort, and, in case of refusal, to reduce it by bombardment.

4. **Attack on Fort Sumter.**—The demand was accordingly made by General Beauregard (*bō-ra-gard*), and refused. On the morning of April 12th, fire was opened on the fort from 14 batteries, with 47 guns and mortars. After a defense of thirty-four hours, the inside of the fort being on fire in several places, and his little band utterly worn out, Anderson surrendered, and, on April 14, marched out with the honors of war. No one on either side was killed.

5. **The Effect on the North.**—The attack on Fort Sumter was the signal of war. The North heard the account with the most intense indignation. On the 15th of April, the day after the surrender, Lincoln, in a proclamation, called for 75,000 militia to defend Washington, and convened a meeting of Congress for the 15th of July.

6. **The Effect on the South.**—The South was wild with joy. The blow had at last been struck. In the whirl of excitement, Virginia joined the Confederacy, April 17. Arkansas and North Carolina followed in May, Tennessee in June—making eleven States, a number which was never increased. Missouri, Kentucky, and Maryland, as yet doubtful, were in the end saved to the Union.

7. **Attack on Harper's Ferry.**—On the day following the secession of Virginia, 250 of her militia marched to seize the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry. The officer in charge, aware of this, destroyed the muskets, set fire

- 
3. What decision was reached? How was this met by the Confederates?
  4. Describe the attack on the fort. Give the result. What was the loss?
  5. What was the effect on the North? What was done by Lincoln?
  6. What was the effect on the South? What influence did it have on secession? What of other Southern States?



to the buildings, and retreated into Pennsylvania. The Confederates obtained much valuable machinery.

**8. Norfolk Navy-yard seized.**—Nearly at the same time the Virginians seized the navy-yard near Norfolk, with all its foundries, docks, machine-shops, 2000 cannon, and immense quantities of powder, shot, and shell. The vessels of war were either sunk or burned by the United States officer in command of the navy-yard, but some of these were afterward raised and refitted by the Confederates. The United States lost property worth more than \$10,000,000, and at a time when it was most needed.

**9. First Blood shed in Baltimore.**—While these events were taking place, the national militia were crowding to the defense of Washington, which was threatened by the Confederates. On the 19th of April, a Massachusetts regiment on its march was attacked by a secession mob in the streets of Baltimore, three soldiers killed, and eight wounded. More troops came, and Washington was saved. On May 3, Lincoln called for 83,000 additional men.

**10. Plan of Operations.**—The war now began to assume a distinct plan. The main body of troops was to be kept near Washington for its defense; Fortress Monroe was heavily garrisoned; General M'Clellan was sent into West Virginia to commence operations; the Unionists were to be assisted in Missouri; General Patterson was ordered to the vicinity of Harper's Ferry.

**11. Operations in Western Virginia.**—General M'Clellan defeated the Confederates at Philippi, June 3, and at Rich Mountain, July 11. He defeated them again at Carricksford, on Cheat River; and at Carnifex Ferry, on the Gauly, General Rosecrans compelled the Confederate, Floyd, to retreat. At Cheat Mountain, the enemy, under

---

7. How did the Virginians show their activity? What was their success?

8. What did they gain about the same time? What became of the war-ships? Why was this so disastrous to the United States?

9. Where and when was the first blood shed? How did this occur? Why were they going to Washington?

10. Give the plan of operations of 1861.

Robert E. Lee, were repulsed, September 14, and the Confederates soon after retired from West Virginia.

**12. Operations in East Virginia.**—With the exception of a sharp fight at Big Bethel, June 10, in which a small Union force from General Butler's command was defeated, nothing occurred in 1861 around Fortress Monroe. The scene of active operations in East Virginia lay near the Potomac. On the 23d of May, troops crossed that river from Washington, and took possession of Arlington Heights and Alexandria. The Confederate capital was changed from Montgomery to Richmond, and the North demanded that the Union army be pushed on to that city.

**13. The Advance to Richmond.**—General Scott, being very old, remained in Washington, and General McDowell was ordered to advance with the army. The Confederates, under General Beauregard, lay near Manassas Junction, 27 miles from Alexandria. After some skirmishing at Centreville, McDowell attacked the Confederates, July 21, at Bull Run, a small stream in front of their position.

**14. The Defeat at Bull Run.**—The battle at first was favorable to the Union troops. Late in the afternoon, General Joseph E. Johnston arrived with fresh Confederate troops from the valley of the Shenandoah. The Unionists, seized with a panic, fled in great disorder toward Washington, leaving behind them 3000 killed, wounded, and prisoners.

**15. Its Effect on the Country.**—As this was the first important battle between the two leading armies, the defeat at first greatly depressed the people of the North.

---

11. What general first distinguished himself in West Virginia? Give the different battles. What other generals are mentioned? What was the result of all this fighting?

12. What took place near Fortress Monroe? At what other point in East Virginia? To what city was the Confederate capital changed?

13. Who took command of the Unionists? Why? Where were the Confederates? What movement was made? When?

14. Describe the battle, and state the result.

Lincoln promptly called for 500,000 troops. The men were quickly raised, and the country soon recovered from its depression. General McClellan was summoned from West Virginia to take command of the troops, which were to be known as the Army of the Potomac. In October there were 150,000 men being drilled under his orders.

**16. Union Defeat at Ball's Bluff.**—Only one movement was made by any of these troops during the rest of the year. Colonel Baker, Senator from Oregon, under orders, crossed the Potomac with 2000 men at Edwards's Ferry, and was overpowered by the enemy, himself killed, and 800 of his men shot or drowned in the river. This is known as the battle of Ball's Bluff, October 21.

**17. Missouri—Secessionists beaten.**—The State of Missouri was saved to the Union through the prompt efforts of Captain Lyon, a United States officer. He broke up a Secession camp near St. Louis, and thus saved the Arsenal. On June 17, Lyon, now general, defeated Governor Jackson at Booneville; and on July 5 the governor had a severe fight with Colonel Sigel (*see-gél*) at Carthage, and was again defeated.

**18. Confederate Successes.**—The Confederate army increased so rapidly that Lyon was compelled to attack it with inferior numbers at Wilson's Creek, near Springfield. He was defeated, and himself killed. The Confederate general, Price, then pushed westward and laid siege to Lexington, held by Colonel Mulligan with 2500 men, who surrendered, after a brave defense, September 20.

**19. Confederates driven southward.**—General Fremont was sent to Missouri, and drove Price southward. When Fremont advanced as far as Springfield, November 2, he was superseded by General Hunter, who led the army

15. What was the effect of Bull Run at the North? Lincoln's acts? Who was called to the command?

16. What event happened on the Potomac in October? Give an account.

17. How was Missouri saved? What battles were fought?

18. What battle was now fought, and why? With what success? What followed?



back to St. Louis. Here General Halleck took command, and pushed Price southward into Arkansas.

20. **Grant at Belmont.**—Kentucky was another neutral State. The Confederates, however, paid no attention to this, and fortified Columbus, thus commanding the Mississippi. Belmont, across the river, in Missouri, was also occupied by the Confederates. General Ulysses S. Grant from Cairo attacked it, November 7, but was repulsed.

21. **Southern Coast blockaded.**—As early as April 27, the Federal Government had ordered a blockade of the Southern coast. All the ports were in possession of the Confederates. It was a long line of coast to watch; and for some time, on account of the smallness of the United States Navy, the Confederates found no great difficulty in running the blockade with fast-sailing steamers.

22. **Capture of Southern Ports.**—The Government determined to capture some of these ports. On August 29, an expedition under Commodore Stringham and General Butler captured the two forts at Hatteras Inlet, which commanded the entrance to Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds. Another expedition, under Commodore Dupont and General T. W. Sherman, captured the two forts at the entrance of Port Royal Harbor, South Carolina, November 7. Thenceforward Port Royal became a useful dépôt of supplies for the Union fleets and armies.

23. **The Trent Affair.**—The Confederates expected to obtain help from foreign powers, and, to secure this, determined to send Messrs. Mason and Slidell as commissioners to Europe. In October, these two escaped from Charleston to Havana, where they took passage on the British steamer Trent to England. Captain Wilkes, in the United States war-steamer San Jacinto, boarded the Trent

---

19. Who now took command? How long? State the other changes, and success.

20. How did the Confederates treat Kentucky? Where is Belmont? What occurred here?

21. What was done by Government in April? State what is said of this.

22. Give the first expedition to the Southern coast. Describe the other.

at sea, seized the two commissioners, and carried them prisoners to Fort Warren, in Boston Harbor.

**24. Satisfaction demanded and given.**—The British Government immediately demanded the release of Mason and Slidell, and satisfaction for the insult to her flag, as the Trent was a neutral vessel. Mr. Seward, Secretary of State, promptly sent word to England that Capt. Wilkes had acted without authority, and the commissioners were released and sent on their journey. The Confederates were greatly disappointed at this; they hoped that war would at once be declared by England against the United States, and that with this help their own struggle with the North would soon be brought to a close.

**25. The Confederate Cruisers.**—The South had as yet no navy, but it fitted out privateers to capture American merchant-vessels. The most active of these during the year 1861 was the Sumter, Captain Semmes, which escaped from New Orleans in July. She continued her destructive cruise until the next February, when she was sold in Spain. The Nashville, another cruiser, ran the blockade at Charleston in October. She came back to Savannah in 1862, where she was eventually destroyed.

**26. Preparations for 1862.**—It had already become quite plain that the war would be a long one, requiring many men and much money. The South was making great exertions. The North was straining every nerve to create a vast navy, to drill and equip immense armies. Foundries, ship-yards, and manufactories, were kept busy night and day. A new currency was created. The banks had suspended specie payments, and the Government issued national bank-notes, called "greenbacks." Gold and silver disappeared from circulation.

---

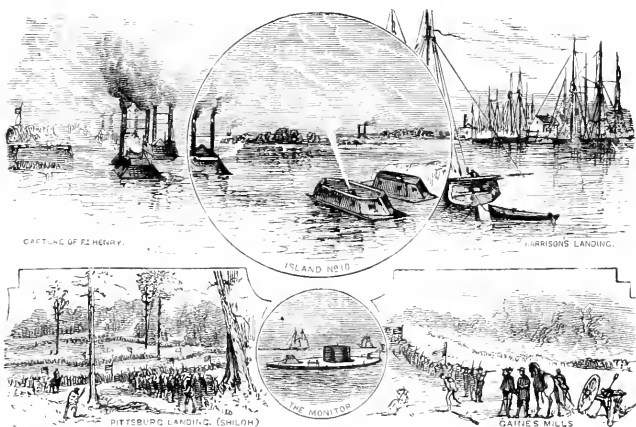
23. To whom did the South turn for help? Give the particulars of the Trent affair.

24. How did England regard this? How was the difficulty settled?

25. How active was the South on the ocean? Give the history of their cruisers in 1861.

26. What was now plain? Mention the efforts of the North.





1862.

27. The Plan of Operations for the Year 1862 covered a large part of the Southern territory. Its leading points embraced the opening of the Mississippi River, then closed by Confederate forts and batteries; the capture of Richmond; the thorough blockade of the Union coast, and the rescue of Kentucky from Secession control.

28. **Confederate Line of Defense.**—The year's fighting opened with the defeat of the Confederates by Colonel Garfield, on the Big Sandy River, in Eastern Kentucky, January 9. On the 19th, General Thomas drove them from Mill Spring, in the same part of the State. In Western Kentucky, the Confederates had command of a line stretching from Columbus, on the Mississippi, to Bowling Green, in the interior of the State. It was a curved line, bending down into West Tennessee, where there were two forts, Henry and Donelson.

29. **Capture of Fort Henry.**—General Halleck, who com-

27. State the general plan of operations for 1862.

28. What battles began the year's fighting? Describe the first Confederate line of defense.

manded the Union army in this quarter, determined to break the enemy's line by capturing these forts. Then Columbus would be abandoned, on the one side, and Nashville and Bowling Green, on the other. Commodore Foote, with his gun-boats, sailed up the Tennessee River and captured Fort Henry, after a heavy bombardment, February 6. General Grant, who went by land, took no part in the attack.

**30. Capture of Fort Donelson.**—Grant marched against Fort Donelson, and Foote came up the Cumberland River to help him. The attack of the gun-boats failed, and, on the 14th, Foote himself was wounded. Grant meanwhile so surrounded the fort that, though the Confederates made desperate efforts to cut their way through on the 15th, they were repulsed, and compelled to surrender on the 16th. The garrison was not less than 12,000 men.

**31. The Result of these Captures.**—Columbus and Bowling Green were both evacuated, and Nashville was occupied by the Union troops. The Confederates fell back to a second line of defense, on the Memphis and Charleston Railroad, the centre of which line was Corinth. To break it, the Union army moved south, up the Tennessee, as far as Pittsburg Landing, where Grant was to be joined by General Buell, from Nashville, with re-enforcements.

**32. Battle of Shiloh.**—Before his arrival, the Confederates, under Generals A. S. Johnston and Beauregard, on the morning of April 6, fell suddenly on Grant, encamped at Shiloh, with the river in his rear. The Union troops fell back, fighting stubbornly, and nightfall found them hemmed into a narrow space near the river, protected by the gun-boats. During the night Buell arrived, and next

---

29. What was Halleck's plan? Why was this thought best? Describe the attack on Fort Henry.

30. Describe the movements of Grant. Of Foote. The siege of Fort Donelson.

31. What immediately followed, and why? Give the second Confederate line. How was this to be broken?

morning the battle was renewed. The Confederates were compelled to fall back slowly to Corinth, fifteen miles distant, the centre of an important system of railroads, and strongly fortified.

**33. Corinth—Third Confederate Line.**—General Halleck moved carefully against Corinth with more than 100,000 men. Beauregard, finding himself outnumbered, abandoned the place on his approach. The second Confederate line was now broken, by the fall of Corinth, and the enemy fell back to a line stretching from Vicksburg through Jackson, Meridian, and Selma.

**34. Operations on the Mississippi.**—When Columbus was evacuated, the Confederates went down the river to Island No. 10, and New Madrid, below. Commodore Foote for weeks kept up a furious bombardment on the island, without much effect. Meanwhile General Pope pushed down the Missouri bank, captured New Madrid, in March, then crossed the Mississippi into Tennessee, after terrible fighting, and thus got into the rear of the island. The garrison, numbering 7000 men, seeing this, surrendered to Foote, April 7.

**35. The River open to Memphis.**—The river was now open as far as Fort Pillow. Here a Confederate fleet was destroyed by Commodore Davis, May 10, and the fort was abandoned on June 4. Another fight with a second fleet took place near Memphis, June 5, and all but one of the enemy's vessels were destroyed. Memphis was then occupied by the Union troops, June 6.

**36. Invasion of Kentucky.**—After Beauregard left Corinth, the Confederate army, under General Bragg, was moved eastward to Chattanooga, Tennessee. General Kirby Smith was at Knoxville with another Confederate

32. What took place on the landing? Describe the battle. The result.

33. Describe Halleck's movements, and their result? What was the third Confederate line?

34. Whither did the enemy go after the fall of Columbus? Describe the events on the Mississippi.

35. What is said of the loss? What advance was made by the Unionists?

army. Nearly at the same time, both columns moved northward into Kentucky. Smith, after entering Frankfort, went as far north as the Ohio River, creating great alarm even in Cincinnati early in September.

**37. Bragg's Movements—Retreat.**—Bragg moved rapidly to Louisville, but was headed off by General Buell. The Confederates committed great ravages in the centre of the State, and commenced their return, with an immense quantity of plunder. Buell overtook Bragg at Perryville, where a battle was fought, October 8. It ended doubtfully, and Bragg continued his retreat without further interruption to Chattanooga.

**38. Grant Commander—Corinth saved.**—Halleck was ordered to Washington, and Grant was appointed to the command of the army west of the Tennessee. Corinth was threatened by two Confederate columns, under Van Dorn and Price. General Rosecrans, under Grant's command, defeated Price at Iuka, near Corinth, September 19. Grant went north to Jackson, Tennessee, leaving Rosecrans at Corinth. Here the latter was attacked, October 4, by Van Dorn and Price, with 30,000 men, who were repulsed, with the loss of 6000 killed and wounded. There was a very bloody and desperate fight.

**39. Rosecrans promoted—Murfreesboro'.**—Buell was now removed, and Rosecrans was put in command of the Army of the Cumberland, with his head-quarters at Nashville. In December he moved against Bragg, who lay at Murfreesboro', Tennessee. Here Bragg attacked him, and a severe battle, known as Stone River, was fought, continuing from December 31, 1862, to January 2, 1863. Bragg was repulsed, but retired slowly, and in good order.

**40. Failure at Vicksburg.**—An expedition planned by Grant while at Jackson, to capture Vicksburg, on the

36. Where was the Confederate army in Tennessee? Describe the movements there.

37. Describe Bragg's advance. His success. The battle of October 8.

38. What change now in commanders? What battles? Describe them.

39. What was Rosecrans's promotion? Describe the battle that followed.

Mississippi, failed in its object. General W. T. Sherman landed on the Yazoo, north of this place, but was repulsed from the strong works with considerable loss, December 29.

**41. Arkansas—Events in the North-west.**—It is to be remembered that, in Missouri, Halleck drove Price southward to Arkansas in 1861. On March 7, 1862, General Curtis, with 11,000 men, was attacked at Pea Ridge, on the north-west edge of Arkansas, by General Van Dorn, at the head of 20,000 Confederates. The battle lasted two days, and Van Dorn was repulsed.

**42. Farragut opens the Lower Mississippi.**—The combined expedition for the capture of New Orleans was commanded by Commodore D. G. Farragut and General Butler. The river was guarded by the strong forts, St. Philip and Jackson, seventy miles below New Orleans, and a fleet of sixteen armed steamers that lay above the forts. A terrible bombardment was tried by Farragut, and this having failed, he determined to fight his way up the river past the batteries.

**43. The Battles—New Orleans captured.**—Before daylight on the morning of April 24, he sailed up, with seventeen ships—his own in the van—and through a terrible fire, which he returned, passed above the forts. He then attacked, and in a short time destroyed, the greater part of the Confederate fleet. Farragut thus fought two battles on the same morning. Next day, the 25th, he appeared in front of New Orleans, and on the 1st of May General Butler and the troops took formal possession of the city.

**44. Operations in Virginia.**—In the early part of 1862, Banks was in command in the Shenandoah Valley, Fre-

40. What expedition was planned? What is said of it?

41. What occurred in Missouri, 1861? In Arkansas, 1862? Where is Pea Ridge?

42. What expedition was planned? How was the river defended? What mode of attack was finally resolved on?

43. Describe the movements of April 24. What followed?

mont in West Virginia, M'Dowell on the Rappahannock, while M'Clellan was with the army on the Potomac. The plan was that these armies should move forward at the same time, and unite, under M'Clellan, to attack the Confederate capital.

**45. Banks forced back by Jackson.**—The Confederates determined to break up this plan, and Jackson was sent against Banks, who was compelled to retreat, by forced marches, across the Potomac. Jackson, on his return, was pursued by two separate columns, under Fremont and Shields. He defeated the first of these at Cross Keys, June 8, the other at Port Republic, June 9, and then leisurely marched to take part in the defense of Richmond.

**46. M'Clellan moves against Richmond.**—Gen. M'Clellan, with the Potomac army, moved on the road to Richmond as far as Manassas, March 10. Presently the route was changed, and the troops, to the number of 121,000, were moved to Fortress Monroe by water, April 2. From this they advanced against Richmond by way of the peninsula formed by the York and James rivers.

**47. Yorktown to the Chickahominy.**—On April 4, they were stopped by the Confederate works at Yorktown. M'Clellan remained here a month, preparing for a regular siege; but when he was ready to open fire, the enemy were found to have left Yorktown. He overtook the rear of the Confederates at Williamsburg, where the latter were beaten after a sharp action, May 5. The Union army shortly occupied a line stretching along the Chickahominy River from Bottom's Bridge on the south to Mechanicsville on the north.

**48. The Iron-plated Ram Virginia.**—Important events

---

44. What were the arrangements in Eastern Virginia? What was the plan?

45. How was this disarranged? Describe Jackson's movements.

46. What was the movement of the Army of the Potomac. What is the Peninsula?

47. What hindered the Union advance? How long? What occurred May 9? What position did the Union army occupy soon after?

had meanwhile occurred near Fortress Monroe. The steam-frigate *Merrimac* was one of the ships scuttled and sunk at Norfolk, April, 1861. The Confederates raised her, cut down her deck, iron-roofed it, gave her an iron prow, and named her the *Virginia*. On March 8, she steamed in among the Union fleet that lay off the fortress, and sunk the *Cumberland* with one blow of her prow. The Congress ran ashore to escape, and was then blown up.

**49. The Monitor and the Merrimac.**—That night a small iron-plated vessel, the *Monitor*, under Lieutenant Worden, arrived from New York. Next morning he attacked the *Merrimac*, and drove her back to Norfolk disabled. She was then anchored in the James for the defense of Richmond. On M'Clellan's advance up the Peninsula, the Confederates abandoned Norfolk, and General Wool, from Fortress Monroe, occupied it, May 10. The *Merrimac* was blown up by the Confederates, May 11.

**50. Battle of Fair Oaks.**—On the 31st of May, the Confederates attacked the left wing of M'Clellan's army at Fair Oaks, where an indecisive battle was fought. General Johnston was severely wounded, and General Robert E. Lee assumed the command. Jackson, in the Shenandoah Valley, had so disarranged the Union plans, that M'Clellan was compelled to wait for re-enforcements.

**51. M'Clellan's Line attacked.**—On June 25, Jackson suddenly fell on M'Clellan's right wing at Mechanicsville. Lee, uniting with Jackson, attacked the Union troops north of the Chickahominy, and forced them to retreat to the south side, June 27. M'Clellan's base of supplies was on the York River; the last battle cut him off from this, and he ordered a change of base to the James.

---

48. Describe the Confederate iron-clad *Merrimac*, or *Virginia*. What did she do?

49. What was the *Monitor*? Describe its operations. What is the after history of the *Merrimac*?

50. What occurred May 31? What was M'Clellan's situation? Why?

51. Who now became the attacking party? When and where? What resolve did M'Clellan now make?

**52. The Union Disaster.**—The retreat to that river then began. The Confederates followed close, and on the 29th attacked the army at Savage's Station. On the 30th, the engagement was renewed at Frazer's Farm. On the morning of July 1, the Union troops reached Malvern Hill, which they hastily fortified with heavy guns. The Confederates attacked this position with reckless bravery, but were mown down and repulsed with severe loss.

**53. The Result of the Retreat.**—Next morning, the Union army reached Harrison's Landing, on the James. Thus ended the retreat, or, as it is called, the Seven Days' Battles. Both armies lost heavily. That of the Confederates was most severe, but they saved their capital.

**54. Invasion of the North.**—Lee, after waiting a month to recruit his army, moved north to Washington. The only force to oppose him were the troops of Banks, Fremont, and McDowell, now united under General Pope, who had been brought from the Mississippi and placed in command. Banks was attacked by Jackson at Cedar Mountain, August 9, and compelled to retreat.

**55. Pope's Retreat to Washington.**—As Lee pressed forward, Pope fell back, fighting stubbornly. A portion of McClellan's army came up from the Peninsula and joined him. Nothing, however, was now of any avail. Pope was defeated on the old field of Bull Run, in the battle of August 29 and 30. The last battle was at Chantilly, September 1, when Pope was again defeated, and then fell back within the defenses of Washington.

**56. Jackson captures Harper's Ferry.**—McClellan now took command of the troops collecting to oppose Lee, who had crossed the Potomac into Maryland. Lee meanwhile sent off Jackson to capture Harper's Ferry, the garrison of which, numbering 12,000, surrendered September 15, with scarcely any show of resistance. In Jack-

---

52. Describe the retreat. What occurred July 1?

53. To what point did the Union army go? What was the result of the retreat?

54. What was Lee's next movement? How was he met? What battle occurred?

55. What is said of Pope's conduct? Mention the various battles. The result.



son's absence, M'Clellan fell on a part of Lee's army, and gained the battle of South Mountain, September 14.

**57. Lee defeated at Antietam.**—Lee retired toward the Potomac, and took up a position, with the Antietam (*an-tée-tam*) River in front. Here he was joined by Jackson. On the 17th, M'Clellan attacked Lee, and fought the bloody battle of Antietam. The loss was nearly equal; more than 12,000 fell on each side. The result was in favor of the Union troops; for Lee, on the night of the 18th, recrossed the Potomac into Virginia. The Union army did not follow him until November.

**58. Burnside in Command.**—M'Clellan was removed from the command, and General Burnside, taking his place, led the army to the Rappahannock, intending to move against Richmond. Lee closely watched Burnside's movements, and took up a strong position at Fredericksburg, on the south side of the river. At this point Burnside crossed and attacked the Confederates. A short but bloody battle followed, December 13, and Burnside, repulsed with the loss of 11,000 men, recrossed the river.

**59. Expeditions on the Coast—North Carolina.**—In the beginning of the year, Commodore Goldsborough and General Burnside commanded an expedition to Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds. The most important point of defense here was the works on Roanoke Island, which surrendered, after a combined attack, February 8. The Confederate fleet was destroyed. Newbern was captured March 14, and Fort Macon, near Beaufort, April 23.

**60. Florida Expedition—Georgia.**—Another expedition from Port Royal, in the month of March, captured Fernandina, Jacksonville, and St. Augustine, in Florida. In Georgia, Brunswick and Darien were also taken.

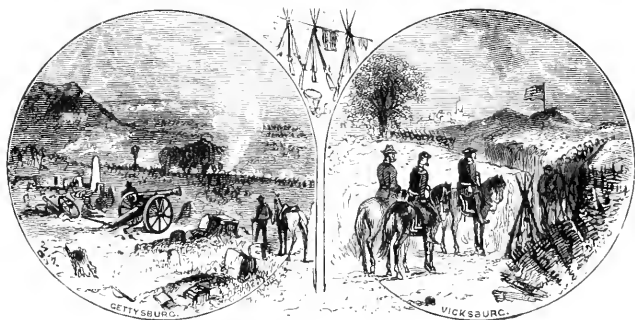
56. Who succeeded Pope? What occurred September 14th and 15th?

57. What is said of Lee and of Antietam? What was the result of the battle?

58. Who supplanted M'Clellan? What movement did he make? What is said of his march? Describe the battle of Fredericksburg.

59. What naval and military expedition took place in January? Describe the various successes.

60. What expedition started from Port Royal? What did it accomplish?



1863.

61. **Emancipation of the Slaves—Plan of the Campaign.**—On the first day of January, 1863, Lincoln issued his celebrated Emancipation Proclamation. In this document he declared all slaves forever free in those States, or parts of States, then under the control of the Confederacy. There was no change in the general plan of the campaign from that of the previous year. The opening of the Mississippi—the capture of Richmond and the destruction of Lee's army—the command of the sea-ports on the Atlantic coast—were the great objects to be accomplished.

62. **Hooker and the Army of the Potomac.**—Soon after the disaster at Fredericksburg, Burnside, at his own request, was relieved from the command of the Army of the Potomac, and General Joseph Hooker took his place. Toward the end of April he crossed the Rappahannock, and advanced toward Richmond. At Chancellorsville he was attacked by Lee, and defeated, with the loss of 12,000 men. Jackson was mortally wounded in this battle.

63. **Second Invasion of the North.**—Lee then, for the second time, invaded the North. Rushing rapidly down

---

61. What remarkable proclamation was made January 1, 1863? Describe this. What was the plan of operations for the year 1863?

62. Who took Hooker's place, and why? What important events followed?

the Shenandoah Valley, he entered Pennsylvania, and created great alarm. The Union army, re-enforced, and now commanded by General Meade, followed, and took a strong position on the hills near Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. Here Meade was attacked by Lee, July 1.

**64. Gettysburg, and the Results.**—The battle lasted three days, to the close of July 3. Lee was everywhere repulsed, and on the 4th he recrossed the Potomac, and fell back to the south bank of the Rapidan. The Union army followed to the north bank of the same river, but there was no further fighting between them during 1863.

**65. Operations on the Mississippi.**—General Sherman, uniting his command with Porter's fleet, moved up Arkansas River, and captured Arkansas Post, January 11. The great work before General Grant was the capture of Vicksburg. After failing in several attempts, he moved his army down the west bank of the river, and crossed below Vicksburg at Bruinsburg, near Port Gibson. His plan was to fight his way to the rear of the city.

**66. Grant in the Rear of Vicksburg.**—Pemberton's army came out of Vicksburg and fought him, while General Johnston attacked him from the east. Grant gained the battle of Port Gibson, May 1. On May 14, he defeated Johnston at Jackson, and, pushing in between him and Pemberton, defeated the latter in two battles, on the 16th and 17th. Grant then shut him up in Vicksburg.

**67. Surrender of Vicksburg.**—The siege was long and wearisome. It ended on the 4th of July, when Pemberton surrendered, with the garrison, numbering 30,000 men. Port Hudson, lower down the river, besieged by General Banks, immediately surrendered, July 8. The Mississippi was now open through its entire length.

---

63. What advantage did Lee take of Hooker's defeat? How was he met?

64. What is said of the battle, and of Lee? What was the result?

65. How did Sherman begin the year? What was Grant engaged in? Describe his attempts, and his final plan.

66. Why was Grant's task hard? What is said of his successes?

67. How long did the siege last, and how did it end? What other place fell?

68. **Rosecrans at Chickamauga.**—Rosecrans did not move forward until the last of June, when he pressed Bragg out of Tennessee into Georgia. Bragg, being heavily re-enforced, turned on Rosecrans at Chickamauga, September 19, compelling him to retreat to Chattanooga. General Thomas, by his firmness, covered the retreat, and saved the Union army from total ruin. Bragg closely besieged Rosecrans at Chattanooga.

69. **Bragg driven into Georgia.**—Rosecrans was removed from his command, and all the armies of the West were placed under Grant. Hooker and Sherman arrived at Chattanooga with re-enforcements, and Grant ordered an advance. Lookout Mountain, across the river from Chattanooga, strongly fortified, was carried by storm, November 24. Next day Missionary Ridge was occupied, and Bragg then retreated into Georgia.

70. **East Tennessee saved.**—At Knoxville, in East Tennessee, Burnside was besieged and hard pressed by Longstreet. On the 29th of November, Longstreet made a fierce assault on the Knoxville fortifications, and was repulsed with great slaughter. Sherman was sent by Grant to Burnside's assistance. On his approach, Longstreet retreated into Virginia, and the strong Union population of East Tennessee was never afterward disturbed.

71. **Confederate Raids.**—A bold raid was made by John Morgan, with 3000 Confederate cavalry, through Kentucky into Indiana and Ohio. He was finally run down and captured at New Lisbon, Ohio, July 27, one month from the time he started from Tennessee. Quantrell, another freebooter, entered Lawrence, Kansas, plundered and burned the houses, and murdered 146 inhabitants in cold blood, August 21, 22.

72. **Movements against Charleston.**—Charleston was

---

68. What occurred in Tennessee? Describe the battle of September 15.

69. What change was made in the command there, and why? What successes followed?

70. What was occurring in East Tennessee? How was Burnside saved?

71. Describe John Morgan's raid. Describe the raid into Kansas.

still an open port. In March the Government sent an expedition, under Admiral Dupont, to that point; but in trying to run past the forts, April 7, the iron-clads were badly injured, and driven back. A fresh expedition of land troops, under General Gilmore, in July, landed on Morris Island and threw up batteries. The firing was so severe that Fort Wagner, on the island, was evacuated by the Confederates, September 6. Fort Sumter was completely destroyed on the land side, and shells were thrown into Charleston. The harbor could now be so easily watched that no blockade-runner could get in or out.

**73. Union Successes in 1863.**—The year had brought important results. The Mississippi was opened by the capture of Vicksburg and Port Hudson; Texas and the Red River country were separated from the rest of the Confederacy; Chattanooga was taken, and made a centre of operation; Northern invasion was repelled at the battle of Gettysburg; West Tennessee was thoroughly held, and East Tennessee swept clean of Confederates; Charleston Harbor was thoroughly closed, and the blockade was kept up with greater vigor.

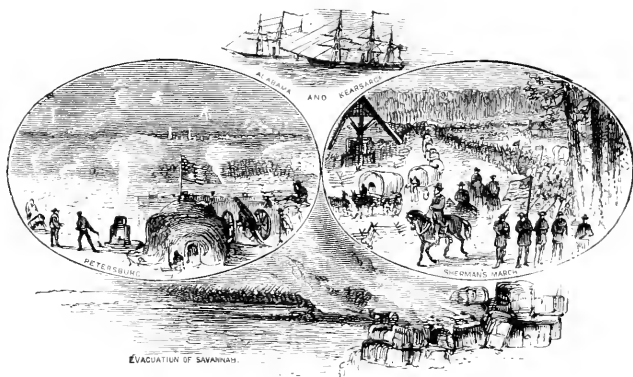
**74. The North and the South.**—The South, growing poorer and poorer, suffered terribly, but her people endured every thing with wonderful determination. In the North also, the people bore the expense and suffering nobly, and men were freely furnished. There was, however, one exception. During the absence of the militia at the time of Lee's invasion, the mob in New York resisted the draft. A riot took place, and a number of lives were lost before it was put down; but the draft went on quietly afterward. In the month of June, the western part of Virginia, which had remained constant to the Union, was erected into a separate State, and called West Virginia.

---

72. What was the success of the naval expedition to Charleston? Describe Gillmore's movements. What was the result?

73. State what was gained by the Union arms in 1863.

74. What is said of the South? Of the North? Of the draft at New York? What new State was formed? Out of what?



1864.

75. **Grant Commander-in-chief.**—General Sherman, leaving Vicksburg, February 3, marched to Meridian, Mississippi, where he destroyed 150 miles of railroad, 67 bridges, many locomotives, and a great amount of cotton and corn. In the beginning of March, Grant was appointed lieutenant-general, in command of all military operations, and went to Washington. Sherman was promoted to the command of three great armies—the Ohio, the Cumberland, and the Tennessee.

76. **The Plan of Operations** for the year 1864 was very simple. There remained only two large Confederate armies, under Lee and Johnston. Sherman was to strike Johnston, who lay between Chattanooga and Atlanta; while Grant at the same time conducted operations against Lee, who was covering Richmond.

77. **Sherman's Campaign—Atlanta.**—Sherman left Chattanooga, May 7, with 100,000 men, on his march to Atlanta. This was a place of great importance to the Confed-

---

75. What was Sherman's first movement in 1864? What changes were made in the command of the armies?

76. What was the plan for 1864? Describe this fully.

erates, and strongly fortified. Several railroads crossed there, and it had foundries for the making of cannon and shell. Johnston, who opposed Sherman, was constantly outflanked by that general; and though bloody battles were fought at Resaca, Dalton, Lost Mountain, and Kenesaw Mountain, by the 10th of July Johnston was compelled to retire within the defenses of Atlanta.

**78. Sherman enters Atlanta.**—The Confederate Government was dissatisfied with Johnston, and put another general, named Hood, in his place. He, however, had no better success; for he attacked Sherman thrice in July, and was each time defeated. Then he allowed the latter to divide the Confederate army, and so lost Atlanta. Sherman entered the city September 2, and there recruited his army. He had lost, in the short campaign, 30,000 men.

**79. Hood's Army destroyed at Nashville.**—Hood next tried to draw Sherman out of Georgia by moving into Tennessee. After following him some distance, Sherman sent word to General Thomas to watch Hood and protect Nashville. Thomas did this so well that Hood was first repulsed at Franklin, November 30, and on December 15 was attacked in front of Nashville. After a battle of two days, he was utterly defeated, and with the wreck of his army fled into Alabama.

**80. Sherman's March to Savannah.**—While Hood was moving against Nashville, Sherman, on November 14, commenced his march through Georgia to the sea. He cut his communications with the North, and determined to live on the country. He met with little resistance, and reached the neighborhood of Savannah in four weeks. On December 13 he stormed Fort M'Alister, which commanded the river, and on the 21st entered the city. "I

---

77. What is said of Sherman's movements? Why was Atlanta so important? What was in Sherman's way? What battles occurred? What was the result?

78. Who took Johnston's place? What was his success? What was the result?

79. State Hood's next plan. How far did he succeed with Sherman? What happened to Hood in Tennessee?

send you," he wrote to President Lincoln, "the capture of Savannah as a Christmas present."

81. **Grant's Campaign against Lee.**—Agreeably to the plan laid down, General Grant moved against Lee, and crossed the Rapidan on May 4, with 140,000 men. General Meade had immediate command of the army, but Grant directed its movements. Sheridan commanded the cavalry. Lee attacked the Union army at Chancellorsville, in the Wilderness, May 5. Three days' terrible fighting followed, and Lee fell back behind heavy earthworks at Spottsylvania Court-house.

82. **Lee holds his Ground.**—Here the fighting was renewed on the 9th, and continued for several days. Grant could make no impression, and, moving round by Lee's right flank, attacked him at Cold Harbor, June 1, but was repulsed. A second attack was made June 3, which lasted half an hour, in which Grant lost 7000 men. From May 5 to June 13, he had lost 54,000 men.

83. **Grant moves to Petersburg.**—Grant now changed his base to the James River, and, crossing it, June 15, tried to capture Petersburg, then a place of little importance. In this he failed, after several assaults, in which he lost 9000 men. The enemy kept on strengthening the place, until it became the key of Richmond, and the siege of Petersburg, with its long miles of intrenchments, began.

84. **Sheridan's Cavalry Movement—Butler.**—When Grant entered the Wilderness, he sent Sheridan, with 10,000 cavalry, to destroy the railroads running north from Richmond. In this he was successful, and rejoined Grant at Petersburg, June 25. As a part of the general movement against Richmond, Butler, with the Army of the James, moved up to City Point. He was forced back by

---

80. What is said of Sherman's next campaign? How long was it? Its success.

81. When and where did Grant move? How was the army commanded? What battles followed? What is said of Lee's movements?

82. What bloody battles followed? What was the result?

83. To what point did Grant move? What was his success here? What did this place become?



the Confederates, and so hemmed in that his force was for a time useless.

**85. The Shenandoah Valley.**—On May 1, three days before Grant crossed the Rapidan, General Sigel was sent up the Shenandoah Valley with 10,000 men, and was defeated at Newmarket. Sigel was displaced by Hunter, who defeated the enemy at Piedmont, June 5. Hunter approached Lynchburg, whereupon Lee, becoming alarmed, sent a large force, and drove him northward.

**86. The Siege of Petersburg.**—Grant's army settled down to the siege, building earth-works and batteries. A mine was run under the enemy's works, and exploded on the 30th of July. An assault was then made by the Union troops, who were driven back, with the loss of 5000 men. In August, Grant seized a part of the Weldon Railroad; but through the remainder of the year there were no battles of importance.

**87. Third Invasion of the North.**—When Hunter was driven north down the Shenandoah, Lee saw that Washington was left exposed in Grant's absence. He ordered General Early northward with 20,000 men. Early entered Maryland, July 5, and, having defeated General Wallace at Monocacy River, went within gunshot of Baltimore and Washington. He afterward moved into Pennsylvania, burned Chambersburg, and returned into the Shenandoah Valley with much plunder.

**88. Sheridan defeats Early.**—Sheridan was sent into the valley, and defeated Early at Winchester, September 19. Three days after, he again defeated him severely at Fisher's Hill. Sheridan, under orders, then laid waste the valley, and moved back. Early followed, and at Cedar Creek, October 19, attacked the Union army, which was forced back for some miles. Sheridan, who was absent

84. Describe Sheridan's movements. What is said of General Butler?

85. What other operations were made to combine with Grant? Describe them.

86. How was Grant occupied at Petersburg? What occurred in July and August?

87. Where did Lee direct his attention, and why? What was Early's success?

during the first attack, returned, re-formed the troops, attacked Early, and routed him with great loss.

**89. Minor Operations—Florida—Forrest's Raid.**—General Seymour led an expedition from Port Royal to Florida. He was badly beaten at Olustee, February 20. The Confederate Forrest made a raid into Tennessee in March, and captured Union City, but was repulsed at Paducah, Kentucky. The main feature of his raid was the capture of Fort Pillow, April 12, where he murdered the negro garrison in cold blood after they had surrendered.

**90. Banks's Red River Expedition.**—Early in March a combined expedition, led by General Banks and Admiral Porter, went up the Red River, Louisiana, to Shreveport; but the troops were defeated at Sabine Cross Roads, and compelled to retreat. After a series of misfortunes, the army fell back to Alexandria. By the fall of the water in the river, the fleet was nearly lost, but was saved finally by Colonel Bailey, who built a dam and floated the vessels over the shallow part of the river. The expedition then returned to the Mississippi.

**91. Naval Events.**—Admiral Farragut was sent in July to force an entrance into Mobile Bay. Lashed to the shrouds of his own vessel, Farragut led the fleet past the forts, under a terrible fire. The iron-plated Confederate ram Tennessee was forced to surrender, and the forts were soon after given up to General Granger, in command of the land force: one more Confederate port was thus closed.

**92. Attack on Fort Fisher.**—Wilmington, another Southern port, was defended by the strong works of Fort Fisher. Admiral Porter and General Butler were sent against this in December. After bombarding it some time without effect, the troops were landed near the fort, but But-

88. How did Grant meet this movement? How many times, and where, did Sheridan defeat Early?

89. What is said of Seymour's expedition? Describe the Confederate raid. What occurred at Fort Pillow?

90. What was Banks's expedition? Describe the movements. From what catastrophe was the fleet saved?

91. What occurred in Mobile Bay? What was the result of this?

ler decided that it was too strong to be taken by assault, and the combined force thereupon withdrew.

**93. Confederate Cruisers.**—Mention has already been made of the Confederate cruisers. Of these only seven were formidable, and five of them were built and manned in England; but they were so successful that they drove American merchant ships from the ocean and ruined our commerce. The most active of all the cruisers was the *Alabama*, built at Liverpool, from which port she was allowed to escape in July, 1862.

**94. Destruction of the *Alabama*.**—After a long cruise, during which she never entered a Confederate port, she was attacked by the United States steamer *Kearsarge*, Captain Winslow, off the harbor of Cherbourg, in France, and sunk, June 19, 1864. She had captured and burned, or bonded, sixty-one merchant vessels, and destroyed over \$10,000,000 worth of property. By “bonded” is meant that the captain of the captured vessel was forced to sign a “bond” for a certain sum of money, payable when the Confederacy was declared independent. The vessel was then allowed to proceed on its voyage.

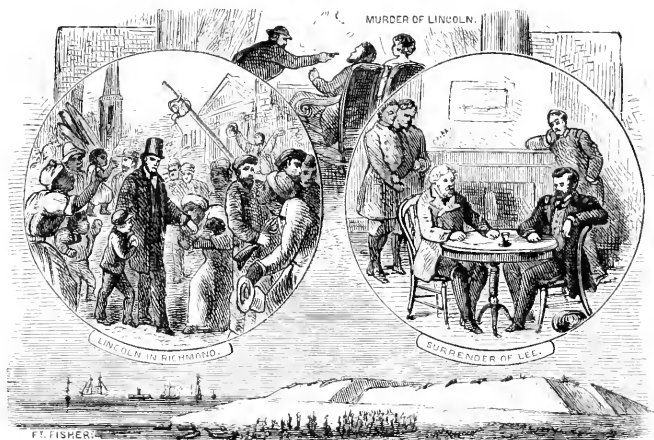
**95. What was gained in 1864.**—Sherman pierced the Confederacy, first by his march to Atlanta, afterward by his famous march to the sea, ending in the capture of Savannah; Thomas destroyed Hood’s army at the battle of Nashville; Sheridan swept the Confederates from the valley of the Shenandoah, and Grant shut up Lee behind the intrenchments of Petersburg; the Confederate battleground was narrowed to the limits of North and South Carolina and a part of Virginia; on the coast, Farragut forced an entrance into Mobile Bay; and at sea, the *Alabama*, the scourge of American merchant vessels, was destroyed by the *Kearsarge*.

92. What is said of Wilmington? How did the expedition against it succeed?

93. What is said of the Confederate cruisers? Of the *Alabama*?

94. What became of her at last? What injury had she wrought? What is meant by “bonded”?

95. State what was gained in 1864.



## 1865.

95. The Capture of Fort Fisher began the operations of the year 1865. General Terry, with a land force, was sent to that point with Admiral Porter and the fleet. After a heavy bombardment by the fleet, the troops assaulted the works, and after some of the most terrible fighting in the war, the fort was taken, January 15. As a result of this, Wilmington, the last Confederate port, fell into the hands of the Union troops, February 22.

96. Sherman's March North—Charleston evacuated.—Sherman rested his army a month at Savannah, and then commenced his march northward through South Carolina. He captured Columbia, and cut the railroad north of Charleston. That city was thereupon evacuated by the Confederate troops, who escaped into North Carolina, to join General Joseph E. Johnston. Sherman pressed on through Fayetteville, North Carolina, and toward the end of March, after some severe fighting, reached Goldsboro', not far from Johnston's army.

95. What was the first event of the year? Describe it. To what did it lead?

96. What was Sherman's first movement? What city fell at last as the result of this? Describe the rest of his route.

**97. Grant and Lee.**—Grant had been busy all winter tightening his hold on Lee in Richmond. In February he sent Sheridan with the cavalry, to cut the canal and railroad east of that city. In this Sheridan was quite successful, and joined Grant again at Petersburg. Lee tried to break through the Union lines on March 25, but was driven back with severe loss.

**98. Grant's Attack—Lee's Surrender.**—On April 1, Sheridan drove Lee from his position at Five Forks. Then came Grant's order to attack along the whole line, and it was pierced in several places. On April 3, Petersburg was entered by the Union troops, and Richmond shortly afterward. Lee, closely pursued, fled westward, and, after a series of disasters, surrendered his army to Grant at Appomattox Court-house, April 9.

**99. Close of the War.**—As soon as General Johnston learned the news of Lee's surrender, he made proposals to Sherman. On the 26th, the terms of surrender were signed by both generals. By the end of May all the Confederate armies in the South-west had surrendered, and the WAR FOR THE UNION was at an end.

**100. Murder of President Lincoln.**—Five days after the joyful news of Lee's surrender had been telegraphed over the North, President Lincoln, while sitting in the theatre at Washington, was shot by a Confederate assassin, and died next morning. Another assassin, at the same time, broke into the sick-chamber of Mr. Seward, Secretary of State, and wounded him severely. Lincoln's death produced the most profound sorrow throughout the United States. He had been re-elected President in 1864, and had served little more than a month on his second term.

---

97. How had Grant been busy? What important movement did Sheridan execute?

98. What occurred on April 1? What immediately followed? To what great event did these lead?

99. What military events followed Lee's surrender?

100. What occurred on the 14th of April? What circumstance added to the sorrow that this occasioned?

## ADMINISTRATION OF ANDREW JOHNSON—THE SEVENTEENTH PRESIDENT.

1865-1869.

101. **Important Political Measures.**—On the death of President Lincoln, Vice-president Johnson, of Tennessee, was immediately inaugurated President. One of the first subjects that engaged the attention of Government was the reconstruction of the Secession States. President Johnson, by proclamation in April, removed RESTRICTIONS ON COMMERCE in the South. In May he proclaimed AMNESTY to all engaged in secession, excepting certain specified classes. In December, the thirteenth amendment to the Constitution, abolishing slavery, was declared to be adopted, having been ratified by two-thirds of the States.

102. **Breach between the President and Congress.**—When Congress assembled in December, 1865, it expressed great dissatisfaction with the President's course in respect to reconstruction of the Secession States. In March, 1867, Congress passed a reconstruction act over the President's veto, defining the terms on which the Secession States might be re-admitted. Those States that refused to accept of the terms were placed under military governors.

103. **The Quarrel increases.**—Among other measures, Congress passed the TENURE OF OFFICE BILL. This was done to prevent the President removing from office, without their concurrence, any one appointed, without consent of the Senate. In August, 1867, the President suspended from office Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, and appointed General Grant to perform the duties of the office. Congress, when it met in December, declared that the President had no power to remove Mr. Stanton, and the latter entered again on his duties.

---

101. Who now became President? What political questions came up for consideration?

102. What difficulty now sprang up? Why? What did Congress do?

103. What bill did Congress pass? Why? How did the President test this, and how did it end?

**104. The President impeached.**—The contest came to a crisis in February, '68. The President removed Mr. Stanton, and nominated Gen. Thomas in his stead. The Senate notified Johnson that he had violated the Constitution in so doing, and the House of Representatives impeached the President. After a long and tedious trial before the Senate, he was acquitted. A two-thirds vote was necessary to his conviction, and it wanted one vote of the number.

**105. The French in Mexico.**—While the war was raging, France joined the Aristocratic party in Mexico, and, with its army, succeeded in defeating the Liberals. Maximilian, Arch-duke of Austria, was declared emperor, and the empire was supported by a French army. As soon as the War for the Union ended, the American Government demanded the recall of the French troops. When these were withdrawn, the Mexicans rose against Maximilian, defeated him, captured, and then shot him, June, 1867.

**106. The Atlantic Cable laid.**—An event of great importance to both hemispheres was the final laying of the great Atlantic cable. This, after repeated failure, was achieved, July, 1866. It is 1800 miles in length, and runs from Valentia Bay, Ireland, to Trinity Bay, Newfoundland.

**107. Purchase of Russian America.**—The territory of the United States was increased, October, 1867, by the purchase of Alaska from Russia for \$7,000,000. It contains 550,000 square miles, and is chiefly valuable for its fisheries and furs.

**108. Grant chosen President.**—In the fall of 1868, General U. S. Grant, of Illinois, the candidate of the Republican party, was elected President over Horatio Seymour, of New York, the Democratic candidate. Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, was elected Vice-president.

---

**104.** What occurred in February? Describe this fully.

**105.** State what had taken place in Mexico. Why did the American Government not interfere earlier?

**106.** For what was the year 1866 remarkable?

**107.** What addition was made to United States territory in 1867?

**108.** What is said of the Presidential election?



## PART VI.—FROM 1869 ONWARD.

### ADMINISTRATION OF ULYSSES S. GRANT—THE EIGHTEENTH PRESIDENT.

1869-1877.

1. **Pacific Railroad built.**—The year 1869 was noted for the completion of the Pacific Railroad, connecting California with the Mississippi Valley. This remarkable enterprise, 1776 miles in length, was finished in the short space of three years. It has already begun to exercise a powerful influence on the trade of the East. Goods from Japan and China are brought across the Pacific to San Francisco, and then over the Pacific Railroad.

2. **Fifteenth Amendment.**—In March, 1870, the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution, ratified by the States, was declared to be adopted. It provided that “the right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.”

3. **The Alabama Question.**—The Alabama question, arising

- 
1. For what was the year 1869 remarkable? What is said of this great enterprise?
  2. Describe the Fifteenth Amendment to the Constitution.



ing out of the destruction caused by Confederate cruisers, created much ill feeling between the United States and England. The American Government repeatedly demanded satisfaction from England for the injuries that had been done by Confederate ships. At length, after much tedious negotiation, representatives from the two powers met at Washington, and concluded a treaty, in which it was provided that the settlement of the "*Alabama* Claims" should be referred to a Tribunal of Arbitration, to be composed of five arbitrators. The President of the United States, Her Britannic Majesty, the King of Italy, the President of the Swiss Confederation, and the Emperor of Brazil were each authorized to name one arbitrator. The Tribunal began its deliberations at Geneva, December 15, 1871.

4. **The Tribunal and its Award.**—On September 14, 1872, the Tribunal decided that Great Britain should pay to the United States the sum of \$15,500,000 in gold for losses sustained by its citizens through depredations committed by the *Alabama* and other Confederate cruisers. This award was paid by Great Britain in the following year.

5. **North-western Boundary.**—By the terms of the Treaty of Washington, the settlement of the North-western boundary dispute between Great Britain and the United States was submitted to the decision of the Emperor of Germany. In October, 1872, he decided that the boundary be a line drawn through the middle of the Canal de Haro, between Vancouver Island and the island of San Juan, instead of the middle of Rosario Straits, as demanded by Great Britain. This decision gave the island of San Juan to the United States.

6. **The Chicago Fire.**—The year 1871 is memorable for

---

3. What is said of the Alabama Question? To whom was its settlement referred?

4. What was the decision of the Tribunal?

5. How was the dispute regarding the North-western boundary settled?

the great fire in Chicago. It commenced October 4, and spread over nearly five square miles, continuing for two days, and resulting in immense destruction of property. The loss was estimated as high as \$200,000,000, and over 100,000 of the population were made houseless.

7. **The Boston Fire.**—The city of Boston suffered from a like calamity in the following year, November 9, 1872. The fire laid waste the buildings, covering 60 acres, in the business part of the city, and destroyed property valued at \$80,000,000.

8. **Presidential Election.**—In the fall of 1872 General Grant was re-elected President; Henry Wilson, of Massachusetts, was chosen Vice-president. General Grant's opponent was Horace Greeley, the candidate of the Liberal Republicans, and also of the Democratic party.

9. **Financial Panic.**—The business of the entire country received a severe shock in the financial panic which took place in the fall of 1873. Beginning with the failure of a large banking house which had become deeply involved in the building of railroads, the panic soon spread through all channels of business; house after house failed, and mercantile credit seemed well nigh ruined. Railroad interests, especially in the newer States, suffered severely. Over-speculation and excessive production are assigned as the chief causes of the crisis.

10. **The Modoc Indians**, who had been placed on a reservation in California, left it, and began depredations on the frontier settlements. Open war broke out in 1872. Several members of the Peace Commission, appointed by President Grant in 1869 to treat with Indians, met the Modocs, and General Canby and Dr. Thomas were treacherously murdered. The war was thereafter prose-

---

6. What is said of the Chicago fire?

7. What great fire occurred in 1872?

8. What was the result of the Presidential election in 1872?

9. State what is said of the financial panic.

10. Describe the trouble with the Modoc Indians.

cuted with vigor, and the Indians retired to some nearly inaccessible fastnesses among the lava beds of that region. From these they were at last driven, and Captain Jack, their leader, was captured. He and three of his companions were hanged October, 1873.

11. **The Sioux Indians** occupied a reservation among the Black Hills, in the territories of Dakotah and Wyoming. Gold was discovered within the limits of the reservation, and a bill was passed by Congress taking away that portion of it lying in Dakotah. The Sioux organized for war, and United States troops were sent against them. General George A. Custer, in command of a portion of these, pushed across the country from Missouri to the Yellowstone. Pressing forward regardless of danger, he was met by an overwhelming force of Sioux under Sitting Bull, and he, with 261 men, nearly his entire force, were killed, June 25, 1876. The Indians afterward retired into the British possessions, where they were safe from the pursuit of the United States troops.

12. **The Centennial Exhibition.**—The centennial year of American Independence was celebrated in Philadelphia, during the year 1876, with a Grand International Exhibition, which was inaugurated with imposing ceremonies by President Grant, May 10, and continued open until November 10, a period of 159 days. Its chief object was to show the progress of the nation in arts and manufactures during the first century of its existence, but all foreign nations were invited to contribute, and thirty-three of these exhibited their products. The space occupied was 75 acres, an area far greater than that of any previous exhibition. The grand total of admissions was 9,910,965. The total receipts were \$3,813,725 $\frac{50}{100}$ .

11. Where were the Sioux Indians located? Why did they become dissatisfied? What happened on June 25, 1876? Were the Sioux conquered?

12. Where and when was the Centennial Exhibition? What was its object? What was its success?

**13. Presidential Election.**—The rival candidates for the Presidency in the fall of 1876 were Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, Republican candidate, and Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, Democratic candidate. When the returns of the election were received at Washington, it was found that there were three certificates of electoral votes from the State of Florida, and two from each of the States of Louisiana and Oregon. There was much uncertainty as to the power of Congress to determine, in such cases, which is the lawful electoral vote of a State. After a long discussion in both Houses of Congress, the matter was referred to a joint committee to report a plan for counting the electoral vote. The result was the appointment of a Commission, to which the returns, in all cases of more than one return from a State, were submitted for decision. The Commission was composed of fifteen members: five from the Senate, five from the House, and five from the Supreme Court of the United States. In accordance with the decision of this Commission, Rutherford B. Hayes was declared elected President, and William A. Wheeler Vice-president.

**14. New State.**—During the administration of President Grant the number of States was increased by the admission of Colorado, "the Centennial State," August 1, 1876.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF RUTHERFORD B. HAYES—THE NINETEENTH PRESIDENT.

1877-1881.

**15. Government in the South.**—The first important act of President Hayes was the withdrawal of the United States troops from Louisiana and South Carolina, kept under military government since the close of the war, and

---

13. Who were the candidates for the Presidency for 1876? What difficulty appeared on counting the electoral votes? To whom was the question referred? How was it settled?

14. What State was admitted during Grant's administration, and when?

the placing of the government of those states in the hands of the people. This act of the President met with severe criticism, but his policy was fully justified by the result.

**16. Railroad Strike.**—During July and August, 1877, a strike among railroad employés broke out, and extended along six or seven thousand miles of railroad, stretching from the Mississippi to New England. It began on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, but was most riotous and destructive in Pennsylvania. It was at last put down by the military, but not before millions of property had been destroyed, and many valuable lives had been lost.



**17. Chinese Immigration.**—On the Pacific coast loud complaints had been made against the landing of Chinese immigrants, brought thither by Chinese speculators, and of the injury to American labor arising from this. On July 16, 1878, a treaty with China was ratified by the United States Senate, in which treaty the Chinese Government agreed to pass stringent laws against involuntary emigration.

**18. Fishery Disputes.**—The disputes between Great Britain and the United States in regard to the fisheries off Newfoundland and the neighboring coasts were this year, 1878, settled by a Fishery Commission, appointed under the provisions of the Treaty of Washington, 1871. The Commission met at Halifax, Nova Scotia, and on

---

15. What was the first important act of President Hayes? How was this regarded?

16. What occurred in July and August, 1877? Its extent? What stringent measures were necessary?

17. What complaints came from California? How were these temporarily settled?

November 23, 1878, gave a verdict against the United States, awarding Great Britain \$5,500,000.

**19. Yellow Fever.**—The cities on the Mississippi, in the summer of 1878, were visited by the terrible scourge of yellow fever, and many of the inhabitants fled northward for safety. Business was suspended, and great suffering followed until removed by generous contributions from the various states. The total number of deaths from the fever was nearly fourteen thousand.

**20. Presidential Election.**—The Presidential election of 1880 ended in the choice of the Republican candidates, General James A. Garfield, of Ohio, as President, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, as Vice-president. The Democratic candidates were General Winfield S. Hancock and William H. English.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF JAMES A. GARFIELD — THE TWENTIETH PRESIDENT.

**21. Inaugural Address.**—President Garfield's inaugural address was received with general respect, and with the confident expectation of a successful administration.



**22. Assassination of the President.**—Such anticipations were soon destroyed by the pistol of a wretched assassin, who shot the President, July 2, 1881, in the depot at Washington as he was about to start on a pleasure-trip to the North. The wound was fatal, and, after lingering

---

18. What disputes were settled in 1878, and by whom? What was the decision?

19. What is said of the sufferings of the inhabitants on the Mississippi? How were these relieved?

20. Who were the Presidential candidates? Who were elected?

21. What is said of President Garfield's inaugural?

for two months and seventeen days, he died at Elberon, near Long Branch, N. J., September 19, 1881, lamented by the entire nation.

**23. Inauguration of Arthur.**—A few hours after the death of the President, Vice-president Arthur quietly took the oath of office, and entered on the duties of President.

---

REVIEW QUESTIONS.

1. What led to the attack on Fort Sumter? Describe it.
  2. What effect was produced on the North and South by the attack?
  3. Name the Confederate States after June 20, 1861.
  4. How did Virginia show her activity?
  5. How was Washington, the capital, saved?
  6. What officers first acquired celebrity in West Virginia, and at what points?
  7. What led to the battle of Bull Run? Describe this, and state results?
  8. What events occurred in Missouri, and what was the result?
  9. State the plan of military operations in 1861.
  10. Sketch the plan of military operations for the year 1862.
  11. How was the Mississippi opened to New Orleans?
  12. What progress was made in opening it from the North?
  13. State the chief events on and near the Mississippi during 1862.
  14. What was the first Confederate line, and how was it broken?
  15. What led to the battle of Shiloh, and what was the result?
  16. How was the second Confederate line broken?
  17. Why was Rosecrans made commander of the Army of the Cumberland?
  18. To what position was Grant elevated this year, and why?
  19. Give an account of the events near Fortress Monroe in March.
  20. What took place in the Shenandoah Valley early in the year?
  21. When and with what object did the Army of the Potomac advance?
  22. Describe its movements until the month of June.
  23. Who commanded the Confederates this year in Virginia?
  24. What finally prevented M'Clellan from moving on Richmond?
  25. Describe what followed.
  26. What use did Lee make of M'Clellan's defeat?
  27. What battle checked Lee's invasion? Describe it.
  28. What change in the command of the Union Army followed?
  29. What was the result of Burnside's campaign?
  30. What were the principal events on the Atlantic coast?
  31. State in a general way what successes were gained during the year.
  32. With what great event did the year 1863 open?
  33. What was the plan of operations for this year?
  34. Who commanded the Army of the Potomac? His success?
  35. How did Lee attempt to profit by this, and who opposed him?
  36. Why was the battle of Gettysburg so important?
  37. What great event occurred elsewhere the day after this battle?
  38. Sketch Grant's movements on the Mississippi and neighborhood.
  39. To what important results did the fall of Vicksburg lead?
  40. How was Rosecrans busy in the year 1863, and with what success?
- 
22. What occurred on July 2, 1881? Was the wound immediately fatal? Where and when did he die?
  23. Who became President, and when?

41. How was the Union Army saved at Chattanooga?
42. Describe the battles in that neighborhood, and their object.
43. Give account of the state of affairs at Knoxville in November.
44. What Confederate raids marked this year?
45. Mention the operations near Charleston, and what was gained there.
46. Give a general review of the results of the fighting in 1863.
47. What new State was admitted in 1863, and under what circumstances?
48. What was the plan of campaign for 1864?
49. With what success did Sherman begin the year?
50. What change was made in the command of the Union armies?
51. Against what point did Sherman move?
52. When, and with what resistance, did he reach Atlanta?
53. What did its capture cost?
54. How was Hood, the Confederate, disposed of?
55. Describe Sherman's next great movement.
56. When and where did Grant first move?
57. How was Grant opposed, as shown by the battles and losses?
58. To what line of defense did he force Lee?
59. State briefly the result of Grant's efforts before Petersburg in 1864.
60. What befell Grant's co-operating force in Shenandoah Valley?
61. Who was finally selected by Grant to command there?
62. Describe the closing battle there in 1864.
63. Sketch the principal events of the Red River expedition.
64. What was the great naval event of the year?
65. What attempt was made on the North Carolina coast?
66. State how much was gained by the Unionists during the year.
67. Where were Grant and Sherman at the close of 1864?
68. What important result was achieved in January, 1865?
69. Sketch the plan of operations during the year.
70. Describe Sherman's movements, and some of their results.
71. How did Grant close the campaign in Virginia?
72. When were Petersburg and Richmond occupied by the Unionists?
73. What became of Lee and his army?
74. When and to whom did Johnston surrender?
75. Describe the lamentable event that immediately followed.
76. Who succeeded Lincoln?
77. What measures engaged the attention of Government?
78. What difficulties occurred between the President and Congress?
79. To what did these lead?
80. What was meanwhile occurring in Mexico?
81. What accession of territory was made during this administration?
82. Who succeeded Johnson?
83. Give the events of 1869 and 1870.
84. Relate the history of the Arbitration Tribunal on the *Alabama* Claims.
85. How was the North-western boundary settled?
86. Give the principal events of 1873.
87. Narrate the troubles with the Sioux.
88. What is said of the Centennial Exhibition?
89. In what way was the Presidential election of 1876 settled?
90. State the first important act of Hayes's administration.
91. Give an account of the great "railroad strike" in 1877.
92. What treaty was made in 1878?
93. State the origin of the Fishery Commission. What did it accomplish?
94. What was the result of the election of 1880?
95. Give a sketch of the assassination of President Garfield.
96. Who succeeded him as President?



## GENERAL VIEW.

1. **Progress of the United States.**—The events narrated after the adoption of the Constitution in 1789 were chiefly political. They relate, for the most part, to change of rulers, questions of government, wars, treaties, and acquisitions of territory. There were other things not heretofore noticed which also exercised great influence on the progress of the country.

2. **The Introduction of Steamboats** on the great rivers of the United States revolutionized the mode of travel. Robert Fulton, an American, was the first in this country to make the experiment of traveling by steamboat. In the year 1807 he went from New York to Albany, a distance of 150 miles, in thirty-six hours; and the invention soon spread westward over the great inland rivers. This immensely assisted immigration into the Western territories.

3. **Canals** also exercised a powerful influence. Foremost among these are: the Erie Canal, stretching from Albany to Buffalo, a distance of 363 miles, and connecting the lakes with the waters of the Hudson and the Atlantic; the Miami and Erie Canal, 317 miles long, and the Ohio and Erie Canal, 332 miles long, connecting Lake Erie with the waters of the Ohio and the Mississippi; the Chesapeake and Ohio Canal, 191 miles long, uniting the Chesapeake Bay and the Atlantic. The total length of canals in the United States is about 5000 miles.

4. **Railroads** checked the development of canals, and the United States, more than any other nation, has been benefited by the locomotive and the iron road. A vast, unpeopled country, with a fertile soil and poor roads, needed rapid communication. In the year 1828 there were but three miles of railroad in operation in the United

---

1. What is said of the history from 1789 onward?

2. State what is said of the introduction of the steamboat, and its benefits to the country.

3. Mention some important canals, and the waters they connect.

States; in the year 1870 there were 53,399 miles. So rapidly did our country move in this, that in the year 1856 it had three times more miles of railroad in operation than all the rest of the world together. The Union Pacific Railroad in length surpasses all other achievements of the kind.

5. **In Arts and Sciences** we have still much to learn from the nations of Europe. There have been, and are, United States painters and sculptors, whose genius has been fully recognized in Europe; but, as a people, we have been so busy filling and organizing new territory, in building roads and developing the resources of the country, that the arts have been comparatively neglected. The same reasons have operated, to a great degree, against the cultivation of science.

6. **Poetry and Literature** have, however, had some celebrated names. With the poetry of Longfellow, Bryant, Whittier, Dana, nearly every pupil in our schools is familiar; and in prose we have Irving, Cooper, Hawthorne, Emerson, Motley, Bancroft, Hildreth, and many others.

7. **General Education.**—The Common School and the United States are almost synonymous terms. Free education is one of the peculiar glories which Americans hold very precious. Still, there are some of the States that are greatly in advance of others; but the day can not be far distant when every child throughout the farthest territory will be taught to read and write.

8. **The Newspaper Press** has gone hand in hand with free education. It has not been fettered in the United States with any stamp-tax, such as was long imposed on newspapers in England. Wherever a printing-press, and types and paper, can be obtained in our broad land, there is no hindrance to starting a newspaper. The Press has greatly contributed to the material prosperity, as well

---

4. What is said of the railroad system of the United States?

5. Why have arts and sciences been comparatively neglected?

6. How is it with regard to poetry and literature?

7. What is said of the common school?

as to the liberties of the people. Our immense natural advantages would be of comparatively little importance without a free press and free education.

9. **Mineral Resources.**—Our mines of metallic ores and of coal are wonderful in extent, and are being developed with extraordinary rapidity. They have added enormously to the wealth of the country. Rich as the Pacific States are in gold and silver, the beds of coal and iron of the Middle and Southern States are still more valuable.

10. **The Products of the Soil** are also an increasing source of wealth. We hear much of cotton and its value, of the sugar and the rice of the South; but the vast surplus wheat crop of the West finds its way to Europe. The hay crop alone of the North is more valuable in money than the cotton crop of the South. There are yet millions of acres in the Far West unbroken by the plough, waiting for the strong arms of freemen who are to occupy them and make them fruitful.

11. **The Increase of States and Territories** deserves particularly to be noticed, together with the increase of population. From three millions at the beginning of the Revolution, the United States have increased to forty millions in a period of not yet a hundred years. Our territory has expanded still more rapidly than our population. In 1776 the thirteen United States occupied little more than a strip of territory on the Atlantic coast, with claims to the country as far west as the Mississippi. Out of this extensive tract were formed: the North-west Territory, lying north of the Ohio and east of the Mississippi, 1787; the territory of the South-west, between the Ohio and Florida, also east of the Mississippi. The additions made to the territory of the United States were:

8. What is said of the newspaper press?

9. State what is said of the mineral resources.

10. What of the products of the soil.

11. What idea is given of the growth of population and increase of territory? What acquisitions of territory are mentioned?

1. The vast Territory of Louisiana, embracing New Orleans, and lying west of the Mississippi, north of New Mexico, stretching north-west to the Pacific, was purchased from France in 1803;

2. Florida, purchased from Spain in 1819;

3. Annexation of the Republic of Texas, 1845;

4. The Territory obtained partly by treaty and purchase from Mexico after the Mexican War, in 1848, extending from the Rio Grande westerly to the Pacific south of Louisiana;

5. The Territory purchased from Mexico in 1853, known as the Gadsden Purchase, embracing what is now Arizona;

6. The Territory of Alaska, purchased from Russia, in 1867.

The table on page 209 will show at one view the different States and Territories formed from the above.

**12. Concluding Remarks.**—When we see the vast extent of country covered by the United States and her territories, the different climates through which these extend, the variety of their products, the richness of their mines, the size and length of the navigable rivers and lakes; and when we consider that all these are under the freest Government in the world, no future can be painted too grand for the destinies of our country. With union, liberty, and public virtue, she will continue to challenge the respect of the world.

## STATES ADMITTED AND TERRITORIES ORGANIZED SINCE 1787.

STATES OR TERRITORIES.	When admitted or organized.	Extent in sq. miles.	From what taken, and when organized.
<b>I. From other States:</b>			
Vermont.....	1791	10,000	New York.
Maine.....	1820	35,000	Massachusetts.
West Virginia.....	1863	23,000	Virginia.
<b>II. From N.W. Territory, ceded to the United States in 1787:</b>			
Ohio.....	1802	40,000	North-west Ter.
Indiana.....	1816	34,000	Indiana T. 1800.
Illinois.....	1818	55,000	Illinois T. 1809.
Michigan.....	1837	56,000	Michigan T. 1805.
Wisconsin.....	1848	54,000	Wisconsin T. 1836.
<b>III. From S.W. Territory, ceded to the United States:</b>			
Kentucky.....	1792	38,000	Kentucky Co., Va.
Tennessee.....	1796	46,000	
Mississippi.....	1817	47,000	Mississippi T. 1800.
Alabama.....	1819	51,000	Alabama T. 1817.
<b>IV. From Louisiana, purchased in 1803:</b>			
Louisiana.....	1812	41,000	N. Orleans T. 1803.
Missouri.....	1821	67,000	Missouri T. 1803.
Arkansas.....	1836	52,000	Arkansas T. 1819.
Iowa.....	1846	55,000	Iowa T. 1838.
Minnesota.....	1858	83,500	Minnesota T. 1849.
Oregon.....	1859	95,000	Oregon T. 1848.
Kansas.....	1861	81,000	Kansas T. 1854.
Nebraska.....	1867	76,000	Nebraska T. 1854.
Washington Territory.....	1853	70,000	
Colorado.....	1876	140,000	Colorado T. 1861.
Dakotah Territory.....	1861	141,000	Minnesota T.
Idaho Territory.....	1863	91,000	
Montana Territory.....	1863	144,000	
Wyoming Territory.....	1868	71,000	
Indian Territory.....	Unorganized	122,000	Dakotah T.
<b>V. From Florida, purchased 1819:</b>			
Florida.....	1845	59,000	Florida T. 1819.
<b>VI. By annexation, 1845:</b>			
Texas.....	1845	237,000	Independ. Republic.
<b>VII. From territory acquired from Mexico in 1848:</b>			
New Mexico Territory.....	1848	124,000	
Utah Territory.....	1849	88,000	Utah T.
California.....	1850	159,000	California T. 1848.
Nevada.....	1864	112,000	Nevada T. 1861.
<b>VIII. From the Gadsden Purchase, 1853:</b>			
Arizona Territory.....	1863	130,800	
<b>IX. From the Russian Purchase, 1867:</b>			
Alaska.....	Unorganized	550,000	

## SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

STATES.	SETTLED.			ADMITTED.
	When.	Where.	By whom.	
Virginia .....	1607	Jamestown.....	English.....	1776
New York.....	1614	New York.....	Dutch.....	"
Massachusetts ...	1620	Plymouth.....	English.....	"
New Hampshire..	1623	Little Harbor.....	English.....	"
Connecticut.....	1633	Windsor.....	English.....	"
Maryland.....	1634	St. Mary's.....	English.....	"
Rhode Island.....	1636	Providence.....	English.....	"
Delaware.....	1638	Wilmington.....	Swedes.....	"
North Carolina ...	1650	Chowan River....	English.....	"
New Jersey.....	1664	Elizabeth.....	Dutch.....	"
South Carolina....	1670	Ashley River.....	English.....	"
Pennsylvania.....	1682	Philadelphia.....	English.....	"
Georgia.....	1733	Savannah.....	English.....	"
Vermont.....	1724	Fort Dummer.....	English.. ..	1791
Kentucky.....	1775	Boonesboro'.....	English.....	1792
Tennessee.....	1757	Fort London.....	English.....	1796
Ohio.....	1788	Marietta.....	English.....	1802
Louisiana.....	1699	Iberville.....	French.....	1812
Indiana.....	1730	Vincennes.....	French.....	1816
Mississippi.....	1716	Natchez.....	French.....	1817
Illinois.....	1720	Kaskaskia.....	French.....	1818
Alabama.....	1711	Mobile.....	French.....	1819
Maine.....	1625	Bristol.....	French.....	1820
Missouri.....	1764	St. Louis.....	French.....	1821
Arkansas.....	1685	Arkansas Post....	French.....	1836
Michigan.....	1670	Detroit.....	French.....	1837
Florida.....	1565	St. Augustine.....	Spaniards..	1845
Texas.....	1692	S. A. De Bexar..	Spaniards..	"
Iowa.....	1833	Burlington.....	English.....	1846
Wisconsin.....	1669	Green Bay.....	French.....	1848
California.....	1769	San Diego.....	Spaniards..	1850
Minnesota.....	1846	St. Paul.....	Americans.	1858
Oregon.....	1811	Astoria.....	Americans.	1859
Kansas.....	.....	.....	Americans.	1861
West Virginia.....	.....	.....	.....	1863
Nevada.....	.....	Carson City.....	Americans.	1864
Nebraska.....	.....	.....	.....	1867
Colorado.....	.....	.....	.....	1876

# PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES.

NO.	PRESIDENTS.	FROM WHAT STATE.	INAUGURATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.	FROM WHAT STATE.
1.	George Washington.....	Virginia.....	April 30, 1789.....	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.
2.	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.....	March 4, 1797.....	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.
3.	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1801.....	Aaron Burr.....	New York.
4.	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1809.....	George Clinton.....	New York.
5.	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1817.....	Elbridge Gerry.....	Massachusetts.
6.	John Q. Adams.....	Massachusetts.....	March 4, 1825.....	Daniel D. Tompkins.....	New York.
7.	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	March 4, 1829.....	John C. Calhoun.....	South Carolina.
8.	Martin Van Buren.....	New York.....	March 4, 1837.....	John C. Calhoun.....	South Carolina.
9.	William H. Harrison.....	Ohio.....	March 4, 1841.....	Martin Van Buren.....	New York.
10.	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	April 6, 1841.....	Richard M. Johnson.....	Kentucky.
11.	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	March 4, 1845.....	John Tyler.....	Virginia.
12.	Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana.....	March 5, 1849.....	George M. Dallas.....	Pennsylvania.
13.	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.....	July 10, 1850.....	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.
14.	Franklin Pierce.....	New Hampshire.....	March 4, 1853.....	William R. King.....	Alabama.
15.	James Buchanan.....	Pennsylvania.....	March 4, 1857.....	John C. Breckinridge.....	Kentucky.
16.	Abraham Lincoln.....	Illinois.....	March 4, 1861.....	Hannibal Hamlin.....	Maine.
17.	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.....	April 15, 1865.....	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.
18.	Ulysses S. Grant.....	Illinois.....	March 4, 1869.....	Schuyler Colfax.....	Indiana.
19.	Rutherford B. Hayes.....	Ohio.....	March 5, 1877.....	Henry Wilson.....	Massachusetts.
20.	James A. Garfield.....	Ohio.....	March 4, 1881.....	William A. Wheeler.....	New York.
21.	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.....	September 20, 1881.....	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.





# DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

---

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED, JULY 4, 1776.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to affect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these states. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing with manly firmness his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others

to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the state remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these states; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners, refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies without the consent of our Legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of and superior to the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws, giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these states:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering fundamentally the powers of our governments:

For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their Legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war, in peace friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent states, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent states may of right do. And for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

*New Hampshire.*—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay.*—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island.*—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

*Connecticut.*—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

*New York.*—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey.*—Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

*Pennsylvania.*—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin,

John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

*Delaware.*—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas McKean.

*Maryland.*—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina.*—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

*South Carolina.*—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia.*—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

# CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

---

## PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I. LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION I. *Congress in General.*

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

### SECTION II. *House of Representatives.*

*Clause 1.* The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several states; and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

*Clause 2.* No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

*Clause 3.* Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

*Clause 4.* When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

*Clause 5.* The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III. *Senate.*

*Clause 1.* The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the Legislature thereof for six years, and each senator shall have one vote.

*Clause 2.* Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*Clause 3.* No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen.

*Clause 4.* The Vice-president of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

*Clause 5.* The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

*Clause 6.* The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

*Clause 7.* Judgment in case of impeachment shall not extend farther than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment according to law.

SECTION IV. *Both Houses.*

*Clause 1.* The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each state by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the place of choosing senators.

*Clause 2.* The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V. *The Houses separately.*

*Clause 1.* Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

*Clause 2.* Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, pun-

ish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

*Clause 3.* Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

*Clause 4.* Neither house during the session of Congress shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION VI. *Disabilities of Members.*

*Clause 1.* The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to or returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

*Clause 2.* No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

#### SECTION VII. *Mode of passing Laws.*

*Clause 1.* All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

*Clause 2.* Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it; but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

*Clause 3.* Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of

the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII. *Powers granted to Congress.*

The Congress shall have power—

*Clause 1.* To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

*Clause 2.* To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

*Clause 3.* To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes;

*Clause 4.* To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies, throughout the United States;

*Clause 5.* To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

*Clause 6.* To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

*Clause 7.* To establish post-offices and post-roads;

*Clause 8.* To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

*Clause 9.* To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

*Clause 10.* To define and punish felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

*Clause 11.* To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

*Clause 12.* To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

*Clause 13.* To provide and maintain a navy;

*Clause 14.* To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

*Clause 15.* To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

*Clause 16.* To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states respectively the appointment of the officers and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

*Clause 17.* To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular states and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased, by the consent of the Legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and,

*Clause 18.* To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX. *Powers denied to the United States.*

*Clause 1.* The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight: but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

*Clause 2.* The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended unless when, in case of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

*Clause 3.* No bill of attainder, or ex-post-facto law, shall be passed.

*Clause 4.* No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

*Clause 5.* No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state.

*Clause 6.* No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one state be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

*Clause 7.* No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

*Clause 8.* No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X. *Powers denied to the States.*

*Clause 1.* No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

*Clause 2.* No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any state on imports or exports shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

*Clause 3.* No state shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delays.

## ARTICLE II. EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I. *President and Vice-president.*

*Clause 1.* The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of



four years, and, together with the Vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

*Clause 2.* Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

[*Clause 3.* The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose by ballot one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said House shall in like manner choose the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them by ballot the Vice-president.\*]

*Clause 4.* The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes, which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

*Clause 5.* No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

*Clause 6.* In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-president; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed or a President shall be elected.

*Clause 7.* The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

---

\* Altered by the 12th Amendment. See page 223.

*Clause 8.* Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation :

“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

## SECTION II. *Powers of the President.*

*Clause 1.* The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion in writing of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

*Clause 2.* He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

*Clause 3.* The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

## SECTION III. *Duties of the President.*

He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them; and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

## SECTION IV. *Impeachment of the President.*

The President, Vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

## ARTICLE III. JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION I. *United States Courts.*

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II. *Jurisdiction of the United States Courts.*

*Clause 1.* The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states; between a state and citizens of another state; between citizens of different states; between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states; and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.\*

*Clause 2.* In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a state shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

*Clause 3.* The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the state where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III. *Treason.*

*Clause 1.* Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

*Clause 2.* The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV.

SECTION I. *State Records.*

Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II. *Privileges of Citizens, etc.*

*Clause 1.* The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states.

*Clause 2.* A person charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having jurisdiction of the crime.

*Clause 3.* No person held to service or labor in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

### SECTION III. *New States and Territories.*

*Clause 1.* New states may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the Legislatures of the states concerned, as well as of the Congress.

*Clause 2.* The Congress shall have power to dispose of, and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular state.

### SECTION IV. *Guarantee to the States.*

The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature can not be convened), against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V. POWER OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by Congress; provided, that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first Article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI. PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

*Clause 1.* All debts contracted and engagements entered into before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

*Clause 2.* This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

*Clause 3.* The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the

members of the several state Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII. RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the Conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the states so ratifying the same.

Done in Convention, by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President and Deputy from Virginia.*

*New Hampshire.* — John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.

*Massachusetts.* — Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

*Connecticut.* — Wm. Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

*New York.* — Alexander Hamilton.

*New Jersey.* — William Livingston, William Patterson, David Brearley, Jonathan Dayton.

*Pennsylvania.* — Benjamin Franklin, Robert Morris, Thomas Fitzsimons, James Wilson, Thomas Mifflin, George Clymer, Jared Ingersoll, Gouverneur Morris.

*Delaware.* — George Read, John Dickinson, Jacob Broom, Gunning Bedford, Jr., Richard Bassett.

*Maryland.* — James M'Henry, Daniel Carroll, Daniel of St. Tho. Jenifer.

*Virginia.* — John Blair, Jas. Madison, Jr.

*North Carolina.* — William Blount, Hugh Williamson, Richard Dobbs Spaight.

*South Carolina.* — John Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Pierce Butler.

*Georgia.* — William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

*Attest,*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

#### AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

##### ARTICLE I. *Freedom of Religion, etc.*

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

##### ARTICLE II. *Right to bear Arms.*

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III. *Quartering Soldiers on Citizens.*

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV. *Search Warrants.*

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V. *Trial for Crime, etc.*

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in active service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI. *Rights of accused Persons.*

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII. *Suits at Common Law.*

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII. *Excessive Bail.*

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishment inflicted.

## ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

## ARTICLE X.

The powers not granted to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively or to the people.

## ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII. *Mode of choosing the President and Vice-president.*

*Clause 1.* The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate; the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately by ballot the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-president shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

*Clause 2.* The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-president shall be the Vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed, and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-president; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

*Clause 3.* But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-president of the United States.

## ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

## ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION 1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the state wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION 2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-president of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a state, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male members of such state, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such state.

SECTION 3. No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SECTION 4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION 5. The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation the provisions of this article.

## ARTICLE XV.

SECTION 1. The right of the citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or any state on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION 2. The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation the provisions of this article.



## CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

---

- 1492. Columbus discovered America.
- 1497. The Cabots discovered Newfoundland.
- 1498. Columbus discovered South America.
- “ The Cabots discovered the Atlantic coast.
- “ Vasco de Gama discovered the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1499. Amerigo Vespucci visited America.
- 1510. Ojeda settled Darien, on the Isthmus.
- 1512. Juan Ponce de Leon discovered Florida.
- 1513. Nuñez de Balboa discovered the Pacific.
- 1517. Cordova discovered Yucatan.
- 1518. Grijalva explored the coast of Mexico.
- 1521. Conquest of Mexico by Cortez.
- 1524. Verazzani explores the coast of North America.
- 1528. Pamphilo de Narvaez's expedition to Florida.
- 1534. Cartier explores the Gulf and River St. Lawrence.
- 1541. De Soto's expedition—discovers the Mississippi River.
- 1564. Huguenots settle in Florida.
- 1565. Melendez founds St. Augustine.
- 1579. Sir Francis Drake enters the Bay of San Francisco.
- 1582. Don Antonio de Espago founds Santa Fé.
- 1584. Amidas and Barlow sent out by Raleigh.
- 1585. } Unsuccessful attempts to settle Roanoke Island.
- 1587. }
- 1602. Gosnold discovers Cape Cod.
- 1605. Port Royal, Nova Scotia, settled by De Monts.
- 1606. Grants to the London and Plymouth Companies.
- 1607. Jamestown settled by the London Company.
- 1608. Quebec settled by Champlain.
- 1609. Henry Hudson discovers the Hudson River.
- “ Champlain discovers Lake Champlain.
- “ Second Charter granted to Virginia.
- 1610. Starving-time in Virginia.
- 1612. Third Charter granted to Virginia.
- 1614. John Smith explores the coast of New England.
- 1615. Cultivation of tobacco commenced in Virginia.
- 1620. Slavery introduced by the Dutch at Jamestown.
- “ The “Great Patent” granted to the Virginia Company.
- “ The Puritans settled at Plymouth.
- 1621. Cotton began to be cultivated.
- 1622. First Indian massacre at Jamestown.
- 1623. New Hampshire settled at Dover and Little Harbor.
- 1629. Charter granted to the Massachusetts Bay Colony.

1630.	Boston settled.	
1632.	Maryland granted to Lord Baltimore.	
1634.	Maryland settled at St. Mary's.	
1635.	Connecticut settled at Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield.	
“	Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts.	
1636.	Providence settled.	
1637.	Pequod War in Connecticut.	
1638.	Harvard College founded.	
“	New Haven Colony founded.	
1643.	Union of the New England Colonies.	
1644.	Second Indian massacre in Virginia.	
“	Charter granted to Rhode Island.	
1660.	Navigation Act passed.	
1662.	Charter granted to Connecticut.	
1664.	New Jersey settled at Elizabethtown.	
“	New York captured by the English.	
“	North Carolina settled on the Chowan River.	
1668.	The French settle St. Mary, north of Lake Huron.	
1670.	South Carolina settled on the Ashley River.	
1673.	Charles II. grants Virginia to Culpepper and Arlington.	
“	Marquette and Joliet discover the Mississippi at the mouth of the Arkansas River.	
1675.	King Philip's War.	
1676.	Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.	
1680.	Charleston founded.	
1682.	Pennsylvania settled by William Penn.	
“	Delaware granted to Penn by the Duke of York.	
“	La Salle sails down the Mississippi to the Gulf, naming the country Louisiana.	
1689.	King William's War.	
1690.	Schenectady burned.	
1692.	Witchcraft delusion in Salem, Massachusetts.	
1697.	King William's War ended by the Treaty of Ryswick.	
1701.	Detroit founded by the French.	
1702.	Queen Anne's War begun.	
1710.	Port Royal captured from the French, and named Annapolis.	
1713.	The Treaty of Utrecht ends Queen Anne's War.	
1732.	Washington born in Westmoreland County, Virginia.	
1733.	Georgia settled at Savannah.	
1741.	“Negro Plot” in New York.	
1744.	King George's War begun.	
1745.	Louisburg captured from the French.	
1748.	Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle—end of King George's War.	
1753.	Fort at Presque Isle built by the French.	
1753.	Washington's mission to St. Pierre.....	October 31.
1754.	Convention at Albany to form a plan of union.....	June.
“	Skirmish at Great Meadows.....	May 28.
“	Fort Necessity captured by the French.....	July 4.
“	Fort du Quesne built by the French.....	
1755.	Braddock arrives from England as commander-in-chief .....	February.

1755.	Conquest of Acadia by the English.....	June.
"	The French defeated near Lake George.....	Sept. 8.
"	Braddock's defeat.....	July 9.
1756.	Great Britain declares war against France.....	May 17.
"	Oswego captured by the French.....	August 14.
1757.	Fort William Henry captured by the French.....	August 9.
1758.	Abercrombie's defeat at Ticonderoga.....	July 8.
"	Louisburg captured by Amherst.....	July 27.
"	Fort Frontenac captured by the English.....	August 27.
"	Fort du Quesne captured by the English.....	Nov. 25.
1759.	Ticonderoga and Crown Point captured by the English.....	July & Aug.
"	Battle of Montmorenci.....	July 31.
"	Battle of Quebec.....	Sept. 13.
"	Surrender of Quebec.....	Sept. 18.
1760.	Attempt to retake Quebec by the French.....	April 28.
"	Montreal surrendered to the English.....	Sept. 8.
1763.	Treaty of Paris ends the French and Indian War....	February 10.
1765.	Stamp Act passed.....	March 8.
"	First Colonial Congress at New York.....	October 7.
1766.	Stamp Act repealed.....	March 18.
1767.	New tax bill passed.....	June 29.
1768.	British troops arrive at Boston.....	October 1.
1770.	Boston massacre.....	March 5.
"	Repeal of duties excepting tea.....	May.
1773.	Tea destroyed in Boston Harbor.....	Dec. 16.
1774.	"Boston Port Bill" passed.....	March 31.
"	The second Colonial Congress met at Philadelphia...	Sept. 5.
1775.	Battle of Lexington.....	April 19.
"	Battle of Bunker Hill.....	June 17.
"	Ticonderoga captured by Ethan Allen.....	May 10.
"	Crown Point captured by Colonel Warner.....	May 12.
"	George Washington appointed commander-in-chief...	June 15.
"	Montreal captured by Montgomery.....	Nov. 13.
"	Attack on Quebec—Montgomery killed.....	Dec. 31.
1776.	Norfolk, Virginia, burned by Lord Dunmore.....	January 1.
"	British evacuate Boston.....	March 17.
"	Attack on Fort Moultrie.....	June 28.
"	Declaration of Independence.....	July 4.
"	Battle of Long Island.....	August 27.
"	New York evacuated.....	Sept. 14.
"	Battle of White Plains.....	October 28.
"	Fort Washington captured.....	Nov. 16.
"	Fort Lee occupied by the British.....	Nov. 20.
"	Washington's retreat through New Jersey.....	Nov., Dec.
"	Battle of Trenton.....	Dec. 25.
"	Commissioners sent to France.....	Dec. 30.
1777.	Battle of Princeton.....	January 3.
"	Tryon's expedition to Connecticut.....	April.
"	Sag Harbor, Long Island, captured by Colonel Meigs	May 23.
"	Ticonderoga captured by the British.....	July 5.

1777.	Battle of Hubbardton, Vermont.....	July 7.
"	Fort Edward abandoned.....	July 29.
"	Battle of Oriskany, near Fort Schuyler.....	August 6.
"	Battle of Bennington.....	August 16.
"	A British fleet arrives in Chesapeake Bay.....	August 25.
"	Battle of Brandywine.....	Sept. 11.
"	Battle of Saratoga, "Bemis's Heights".....	Sept. 19.
"	Philadelphia captured by the British.....	Sept. 26.
"	Battle of Germantown.....	October 4.
"	Forts Clinton and Montgomery captured.....	October 6.
"	Battle of Saratoga, "Stillwater".....	October 7.
"	Surrender of Burgoyne.....	October 17.
1778.	The British evacuate Philadelphia.....	June 18.
"	Battle of Monmouth.....	June 28.
"	Massacre of Wyoming.....	July 3.
"	Battle of Quaker Hill, Rhode Island.....	August 29.
"	The British capture Savannah, Georgia.....	Dec. 29.
1779.	Sunbury, Georgia, captured by the British.....	January 9.
"	Battle of Kettle Creek.....	Feb. 14.
"	Battle of Brier Creek.....	March 3.
"	Capture of Stony Point by General Wayne.....	July 15.
"	Battle of Chemung, "Newtown"—Sullivan's expedition.....	October 9.
"	Paul Jones's victory.....	August 29.
"	Attack on Savannah—the Americans repulsed.....	Sept. 23.
1780.	Siege of Charleston begun.....	April, May.
"	Battle of Monk's Corner.....	April 14.
"	Charleston surrendered to the English.....	May 12.
"	Battle of Waxhaw Creek.....	May 29.
"	Battle of Springfield, New Jersey.....	June 23.
"	Second French fleet arrives at Newport.....	July 10.
"	Battle of Hanging Rock.....	August 6.
"	Battle of Sanders's Creek—first battle of Camden....	August 16.
"	Battle of Fishing Creek.....	August 18.
"	Arnold's treason.....	September.
"	Battle of King's Mountain.....	October 7.
1781.	Mutiny of the Pennsylvania line.....	January 1.
"	Greene's famous retreat.....	Jan. & Feb.
"	Articles of Confederation ratified.....	—
"	Public buildings burned in Richmond by Arnold.....	January 5.
"	Battle of the Cowpens.....	January 17.
"	Mutiny of the New Jersey troops.....	January 20.
"	Battle of Guilford Court-house.....	March 15.
"	Battle of Hobkirk's Hill—second battle of Camden...	April 25.
"	New London burned by Arnold.....	Sept. 6.
"	Battle of Eutaw Springs.....	Sept. 8.
1781.	Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown.....	October 19.
1782.	Cessation of hostilities.....	April.
"	Preliminary treaty of peace at Paris.....	Nov. 30.
1783.	Definitive treaty of peace at Paris.....	Sept. 3.
"	Evacuation of New York by the British.....	Nov. 25.

1783.	Washington resigns his commission.....	Dec. 23.
1786.	Breaking out of Shays's Rebellion.....	—
1787.	The Constitution adopted by the Convention.....	Sept. 17.
1788.	The Constitution adopted by eleven States.....	—
1789.	First Congress meets at New York.....	March 4.
“	Washington inaugurated President.....	April 30.
1790.	Secretary Hamilton proposes his plan for the payment of the national debt.....	January.
“	General Harmar defeated by the Indians.....	Oct. 17, 22.
1791.	Vermont admitted into the Union.....	Feb. 18.
“	St. Clair defeated by the Indians.....	November 4.
1792.	Kentucky admitted into the Union.....	June 1.
“	Discovery of the Columbia River by Captain Gray....	May 11.
1793.	Invention of the cotton-gin.....	—
“	Difficulties with the French ambassador Genet.....	—
1794.	Battle of the Maumee.....	August 20.
“	Whisky insurrection in Pennsylvania.....	—
1795.	Jay's treaty ratified.....	June.
1796.	Tennessee admitted into the Union.....	June.
1797.	John Adams inaugurated.....	March 4.
1798.	Trouble with France.....	—
“	Washington commander-in-chief.....	July.
1799.	Washington died at Mount Vernon.....	Dec. 14.
1800.	The capital removed to Washington.....	—
“	Treaty of peace with France.....	Sept. 30.
1801.	Thomas Jefferson inaugurated President.....	March 4.
“	War declared against Tripoli.....	June.
1802.	Ohio admitted into the Union.....	November.
1803.	Purchase of Louisiana from the French.....	April 30.
“	Commodore Preble sent against Tripoli.....	—
1804.	Lientenant Decatur destroys the frigate Philadelphia.....	February 3.
“	Hamilton killed by Burr in a duel.....	July 11.
1805.	Derne captured by General Eaton.....	April 27.
“	Treaty of peace with Tripoli.....	June.
1806.	Blockade of the French coast declared by the British.....	May.
“	Blockade of the British Islands declared by Napoleon.....	November.
1807.	The Chesapeake fired into by the Leopard.....	June 22.
“	British “Orders in Council” prohibiting trade with France and her allies.....	Nov. 11.
“	Napoleon's “Milan Decree” prohibiting trade with England and her colonies.....	Dec. 17.
“	Embargo on American ships.....	Dec. 22.
“	Fulton's first steamboat, the Clermont, on the Hud- son.....	Sept. 14.
1809.	Embargo Act repealed.....	March 1.
“	Commerce with Great Britain and France prohibited.....	March 1.
“	James Madison inaugurated.....	March 4.
1811.	Engagement between the United States frigate Presi- dent and the Little Belt.....	May 16.
“	Battle of Tippecanoe.....	Nov. 7.
1812.	President Madison declares war against England.....	June 19.

1812.	Louisiana admitted into the Union.....	April 14.
"	General Hull invades Canada.....	July 12.
"	Surrender of Mackinaw.....	July 17.
"	Surrender of Detroit.....	August 16.
"	Battle of Queenstown.....	October 13.
"	<i>Naval</i> : The Constitution captures the Guerriere....	August 19.
"	The sloop-of-war Wasp captures the brig Frolic....	October 18.
"	The frigate United States captures the Macedonian	October 25.
"	The Constitution captures the Java.....	Dec. 29.
1813.	Battle of Frenchtown.....	January 22.
"	Capture of York (now Toronto), Canada.....	April 27.
"	Siege of Fort Meigs.....	May 1.
"	Attack on Sackett's Harbor.....	May 29.
"	Battle of Sandusky.....	August 2.
"	Perry's victory on Lake Erie.....	Sept. 10.
"	Battle of the Thames.....	October 5.
"	Battle of Chrysler's Farm.....	Nov. 11.
"	The Hornet captures the Peacock.....	Feb. 24.
"	The Chesapeake captured by the Shannon.....	June 1.
"	The Argus captured by the Pelican.....	August 14.
"	The Enterprise captures the Boxer.....	Sept. 5.
1814.	The Creek War ended—battle of Horse-shoe Bend...	March 27.
"	Fort Erie captured by the Americans.....	July 3.
"	Battle of Lundy's Lane.....	July 25.
"	Battle of Fort Erie.....	August 15.
"	Battle of Bladensburg.....	August 24.
"	City of Washington captured by the British.....	August 24.
"	Battle of Plattsburg.....	Sept. 11.
"	Battle of Lake Champlain.....	Sept. 11.
"	Battle of North Point.....	Sept. 12.
"	Bombardment of Fort M'Henry.....	Sept. 13.
"	Battle of Lake Borgne.....	Dec. 14.
"	Hartford Convention.....	Dec. 14.
"	Battle near New Orleans.....	Dec. 23.
"	Treaty of peace.....	Dec. 24.
1815.	Battle of New Orleans.....	January 8.
"	<i>Naval</i> : The frigate President captured.....	January 15.
"	The Essex captured by two British vessels.....	March 28.
"	War with Algiers.....	March.
"	Treaty of peace with Algiers.....	June.
1816.	Indiana admitted into the Union.....	Dec. 11.
1817.	James Monroe inaugurated.....	March 4.
"	Mississippi admitted into the Union.....	Dec. 10.
1818.	Pensacola, Florida, captured by General Jackson....	May 24.
"	Illinois admitted into the Union.....	Dec. 3.
1819.	Alabama admitted into the Union.....	Dec. 14.
1820.	Missouri Compromise Act passed.....	March 3.
"	Maine admitted into the Union.....	March 15.
"	Florida purchased of Spain.....	October.
1821.	Missouri admitted into the Union.....	August 10.
1824.	Visit of Lafayette to the United States.....	August 15.

1825.	John Quincy Adams inaugurated.....	March 4.
1826.	Ex-Presidents Adams and Jefferson died.....	July 4.
1829.	Andrew Jackson inaugurated.....	March 4.
1832.	Black Hawk War.....	—
1835.	Seminole War begun—Dade's massacre by Seminoles.....	Dec. 28.
1836.	Arkansas admitted into the Union.....	June 15.
1837.	Michigan admitted into the Union.....	Jan. 26.
“	Martin Van Buren inaugurated.....	March 4.
“	Battle of Okechobee.....	Dec. 25.
1841.	William H. Harrison inaugurated.....	March 4.
“	President Harrison died.....	April 4.
“	John Tyler inaugurated.....	April 6.
1843.	The “Dorr Rebellion” in Rhode Island.....	—
1845.	Resolution of Congress annexing Texas.....	March 1.
“	Acts of Congress admitting Florida and Iowa.....	March 3.
“	James K. Polk inaugurated.....	March 4.
1846.	The northwestern boundary fixed at 49°.....	—
“	General Taylor ordered to the Rio Grande.....	Jan. 13.
“	Captain Thornton's party captured by Mexicans.....	April 26.
“	Battle of Palo Alto.....	May 8.
“	Battle of Resaca de la Palma.....	May 9.
“	Congress declared war against Mexico.....	May 11.
“	Matamoras captured.....	May 18.
“	Monterey captured.....	Sept. 24.
“	Battle of Bracito.....	Dec. 25.
1847.	Battle of Buena Vista.....	Feb. 23.
“	Capture of Vera Cruz.....	March 27.
“	Battle of Cerro Gordo.....	April 18.
“	Battle of Contreras.....	August 20.
“	Capture of Molino del Rey.....	Sept. 8.
“	Capture of Chapultepec.....	Sept. 13.
“	Mexico surrendered.....	Sept. 14.
1848.	Treaty of peace with Mexico.....	Feb. 2.
“	Gold discovered in California.....	February.
“	Wisconsin admitted into the Union.....	May 29.
1849.	General Taylor inaugurated.....	March 5.
1850.	General Taylor died.....	July 9.
“	Millard Fillmore inaugurated.....	July 10.
“	California admitted into the Union.....	Sept. 9.
1853.	Franklin Pierce inaugurated.....	March 4.
1854.	Commodore Perry's treaty with Japan.....	March.
1857.	James Buchanan inaugurated.....	March 4.
1858.	Minnesota admitted into the Union.....	May 11.
1859.	Oregon admitted into the Union.....	February.
1860.	South Carolina seceded from the Union.....	Dec. 20.
“	Steamer Star of the West fired into by the Secessionists at Charleston.....	January 9.
1861.	Kansas admitted as a State.....	January 29.
“	A Southern Confederacy formed by South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Florida, at Montgomery, Alabama.....	February 4.

1861.	Jefferson Davis elected provisional president of the Confederacy.....	February 8.
"	Abraham Lincoln inaugurated President of the United States.....	March 4.
"	Attack on Fort Sumter.....	April 12, 13.
"	Virginia joins the Confederacy.....	April 17.
"	Harper's Ferry Arsenal captured by Virginia militia.....	April 18.
"	Massachusetts troops attacked in Baltimore.....	April 19.
"	Norfolk Navy-yard abandoned.....	April 21.
"	Battle at Philippi, Virginia.....	June 3.
"	Union troops repulsed at Big Bethel, Virginia.....	June 10.
"	Battle of Booneville, Missouri.....	June 17.
"	Battle of Carthage, Missouri.....	July 5.
"	Battle of Rich Mountain, Virginia.....	July 11.
"	Battle at Carriksford, Virginia.....	July 14.
"	Confederate capital changed to Richmond.....	July 20.
"	First battle of Bull Run, Virginia.....	July 21.
"	Battle of Wilson's Creek, Missouri.....	August 10.
"	Capture of forts at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina ..	August 29.
"	Battle at Carnifex Landing, Ganley River, Virginia..	Sept. 10.
"	Confederate repulse at Cheat Mountain, Virginia.....	Sept. 14.
"	Capture of Lexington, Missouri.....	Sept. 20.
"	Union disaster at Ball's Bluff, Virginia.....	October 21.
"	Battle at Belmont, Missouri.....	November 7.
"	Capture of Port Royal, South Carolina.....	November 7.
"	Seizure of Mason and Slidell on board the Trent.....	November 8.
1862.	Engagement at the Big Sandy River, Kentucky.....	January 9.
"	Confederates beaten at Mill Spring, Kentucky.....	January 19.
"	Capture of Fort Henry, Tennessee.....	February 6.
"	Capture of Roanoke Island, North Carolina.....	February 8.
"	Fort Donelson, Tennessee, captured.....	February 16.
"	Union expedition against Florida and Georgia dispatched.....	February 28.
"	Battle of Pea Ridge, Arkansas.....	March 7, 8.
"	The Ram Virginia sinks the Cumberland and Congress.....	March 8.
"	Engagement between the Monitor and Virginia.....	March 9.
"	Capture of Newbern, North Carolina.....	March 14.
"	Battle at Winchester, Virginia.....	March 23.
"	Battle of Shiloh, Pittsburg Landing, Tennessee.....	April 6, 7.
"	Capture of Island No. 10, Mississippi River.....	April 7.
"	Capture of Fort Pulaski, Georgia.....	April 11.
"	Farragut passes Forts Jackson and St. Philip, Mississippi River.....	April 24.
"	Capture of New Orleans.....	April 25.
"	Capture of Fort Macon and Beaufort, South Carolina.....	April 25.
"	Surrender of Forts Jackson and St. Philip.....	April 28.
"	Yorktown, Virginia, taken.....	May 4.
"	Battle of Williamsburg, Virginia.....	May 5.
"	Norfolk, Virginia, occupied by Union troops.....	May 10.
"	Banks's retreat down the Shenandoah Valley.....	May.



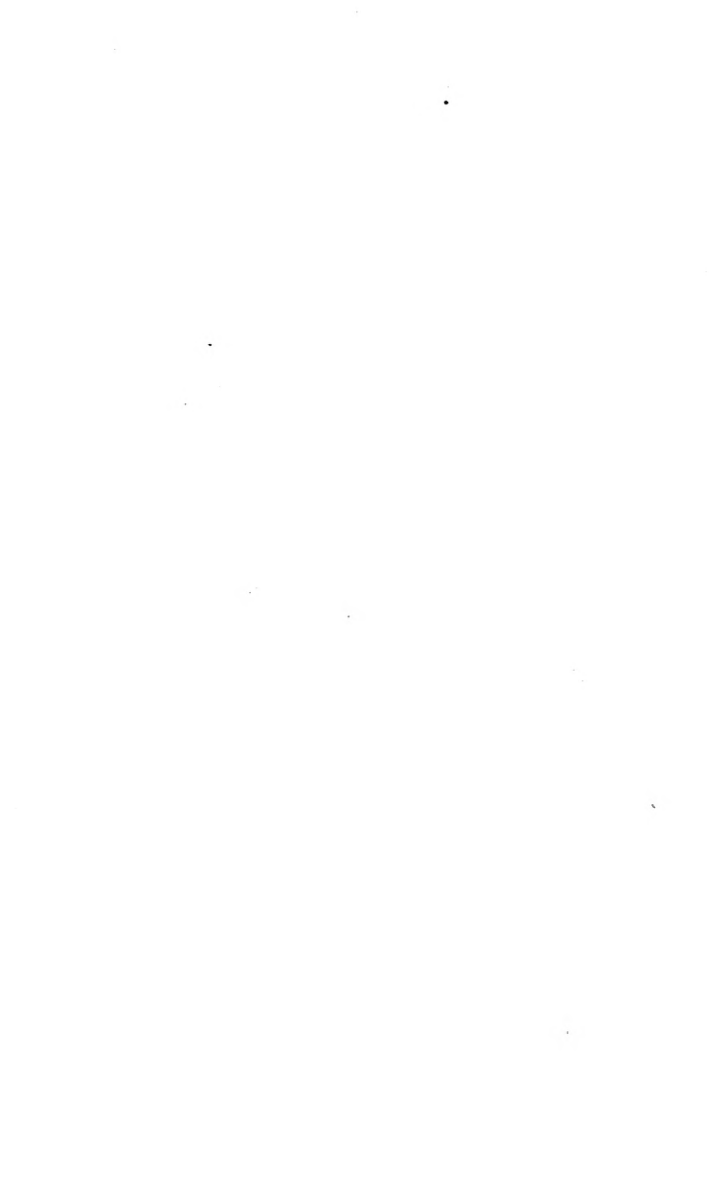
1862.	Battle at Front Royal, Virginia.....	May 23.
"	Corinth, Mississippi, taken.....	May 30.
"	Battle of Fair Oaks, or Seven Pines.....	( May 31, June 1.
"	Lee assumes command of the Confederates in Virginia.....	June 3.
"	Capture of Fort Pillow, Tennessee.....	June 4.
"	Naval battle, and surrender of Memphis, Tennessee..	June 6.
"	Seven days' battles from the Chickahominy to the James.....	( June 25 to July 1.
"	President Lincoln calls for 300,000 troops.....	July 1.
"	Battle of Cedar Mountain, Virginia.....	August 9.
"	Pope's battles in defense of Washington.....	( August 26 to Sept. 1.
"	Battle of Richmond, Kentucky.....	August 30.
"	Invasion of Maryland by Lee.....	Sept. 5.
"	Battle of South Mountain, Maryland.....	Sept. 14.
"	Capture of Harper's Ferry by Jackson.....	Sept. 15.
"	Battle of Antietam, Maryland.....	Sept. 17.
"	Battle of Iuka, Mississippi.....	Sept. 19.
"	Battle of Corinth, Mississippi.....	October 4.
"	Battle of Perryville, Kentucky.....	October 8.
"	Battle of Fredericksburg, Virginia.....	Dec. 13.
"	Battle of Chickasaw Bayou, Vicksburg, Mississippi...	Dec. 29.
"	Battle of Murfreesboro', Tennessee—first day.....	Dec. 31.
1863.	Emancipation Proclamation by President Lincoln....	January 1.
"	Battle of Murfreesboro'—second day.....	January 2.
"	Arkansas Post captured by Union troops.....	January 11.
"	Attack on Fort Sumter repulsed.....	April 7.
"	Battle of Port Gibson, Mississippi.....	May 1.
"	Battle of Chancellorsville, Virginia.....	May 2, 3.
"	Confederates defeated at Jackson, Mississippi.....	May 14.
"	Battle of Champion Hill, Mississippi.....	May 16.
"	Battle of Big Black River, Mississippi.....	May 17.
"	General Grant besieges Vicksburg.....	June.
"	Lee's second invasion of Maryland.....	June.
"	West Virginia admitted as a State.....	June 20.
"	The Confederate Morgan starts on his raid.....	June 27.
"	Battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania.....	July 1-3.
"	Surrender of Vicksburg, Mississippi.....	July 4.
"	Port Hudson surrendered.....	July 8.
"	Draft riots in New York City.....	July 13-16.
"	Morgan captured near New Lisbon, Ohio.....	July 27.
"	Lawrence, Kansas, burned by Quantrell.....	Aug. 21, 22.
"	Fort Wagner evacuated by the Confederates.....	Sept. 6.
"	Battle of Chickamauga, Georgia.....	Sept. 19, 20.
"	Battle of Lookout Mountain, Georgia.....	Nov. 25.
"	Battle of Missionary Ridge, Georgia.....	Nov. 26.
"	Longstreet repulsed at Knoxville, Kentucky.....	Nov. 29.
1864.	Battle of Olustee, Florida.....	Feb. 20.
"	Sherman's expedition to Meridian, Mississippi.....	February.

1864.	Grant appointed Lieutenant-general.....	March 3.
"	Forrest's raid—captures Union City.....	March 24.
"	Battle of Pleasant Hill, Louisiana.....	April 9.
"	Forrest's raid, Tennessee—Fort Pillow massacre.....	April 12.
"	The Army of the Potomac crosses the Rapidan.....	May 4.
"	Battles in the Wilderness, Virginia.....	May 5-7.
"	Sherman begins his march toward Atlanta, Georgia..	May 7.
"	Butler defeated at Bermuda Hundred, Virginia.....	May 7.
"	Battles near Spottsylvania Court-house, Virginia.....	May 7-12.
"	Sheridan's expedition north of Richmond.....	May, June.
"	Battle of Cold Harbor, Virginia.....	June 1-3.
"	Battle of Piedmont, Virginia.....	June 5.
"	The Potomac Army crosses the James River.....	June 15.
"	Petersburg assaulted.....	June 18-21.
"	Destruction of the Alabama by the Kearsarge.....	June 19.
"	Early invades Maryland.....	July 5.
"	Battle of Monocacy, Maryland.....	July 9.
"	Battles before Atlanta.....	July 20, 22, 28.
"	Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, burned.....	July 30.
"	Union repulse at Petersburg, Virginia.....	July 30.
"	Farragut's fleet enters Mobile Bay.....	Aug. 5.
"	Fort Gaines and Fort Morgan taken.....	Aug. 8, 23.
"	Weldon Railroad seized by the Unionists.....	Aug. 18.
"	Battles on Sherman's route to Atlanta.....	May to Sept.
"	Atlanta captured by Sherman.....	Sept. 2.
"	Battle of Winchester, Virginia.....	Sept. 19.
"	Battle of Fisher's Hill, Virginia.....	Sept. 22.
"	Battle of Cedar Creek, Virginia.....	October 19.
"	Nevada admitted into the Union.....	October 31.
"	Sherman's march from Atlanta to the sea begun.....	Nov. 14.
"	Battle of Franklin, Tennessee.....	Nov. 30.
"	Fort M'Allister, near Savannah, captured.....	Dec. 13.
"	Battle of Nashville, Tennessee.....	Dec. 15, 16.
"	Savannah captured by Sherman.....	Dec. 21.
"	First bombardment of Fort Fisher, North Carolina...	Dec. 24.
1865.	Capture of Fort Fisher.....	January 15.
"	Capture of Columbia, South Carolina.....	February 17.
"	Charleston, South Carolina, evacuated by the Confederates.....	February 17.
"	Wilmington, North Carolina, captured.....	February 22.
"	Sheridan's expedition up the Shenandoah Valley, Virginia.....	February 27.
"	Fayetteville, North Carolina, occupied.....	March 12.
"	Battle of Goldsboro', North Carolina.....	March 21.
"	Battle of Five Forks, Virginia.....	April 1.
"	Capture of Petersburg and Richmond.....	April 3.
"	Lee's surrender to Grant.....	April 9.
"	Raleigh, North Carolina, entered by Sherman.....	April 13.
"	Assassination of President Lincoln.....	April 14.
"	Andrew Johnson inaugurated.....	April 15.

1865.	Johnston's surrender to Sherman.....	April 26.
"	Jefferson Davis captured.....	May 10.
"	Surrender of the last Confederate force in the South-west.....	May 26.
1866.	Atlantic telegraph cable laid.....	July.
1867.	Amnesty declared.....	September 8.
"	Treaty for the purchase of Alaska ratified.....	April 9.
1868.	Impeachment of President Johnson.....	January 24.
1869.	General Grant inaugurated.....	March 4.
"	Pacific Railroad completed.....	May 10.
1871.	Great fire at Chicago.....	October 4.
1872.	Settlement of the " <i>Alabama</i> Question".....	Sept. 14.
"	Settlement of the North-western boundary.....	October.
"	Grant re-elected President.....	November.
1873.	Financial panic begins.....	Sept. 18.
"	War with the Modocs ended.....	June 1.
1876.	Sioux War—massacre of General Custer's force.....	June 25.
"	Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia opened.....	May 10.
"	Colorado admitted.....	August 1.
"	Presidential election.....	November.
1877.	Rutherford Hayes inaugurated.....	March 5.
1878.	Fishery Commission settles disputes.....	Nov. 23.
1880.	Presidential election.....	November.
1881.	Inauguration of President Garfield.....	March 4.
"	Assassination of President Garfield.....	July 2.
"	Death of President Garfield.....	Sept. 19.
"	Inauguration of President Arthur.....	Sept. 20.

THE END.















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 010 546 380 7